AL-BAHER

Connect Plus

4th Primary

2023

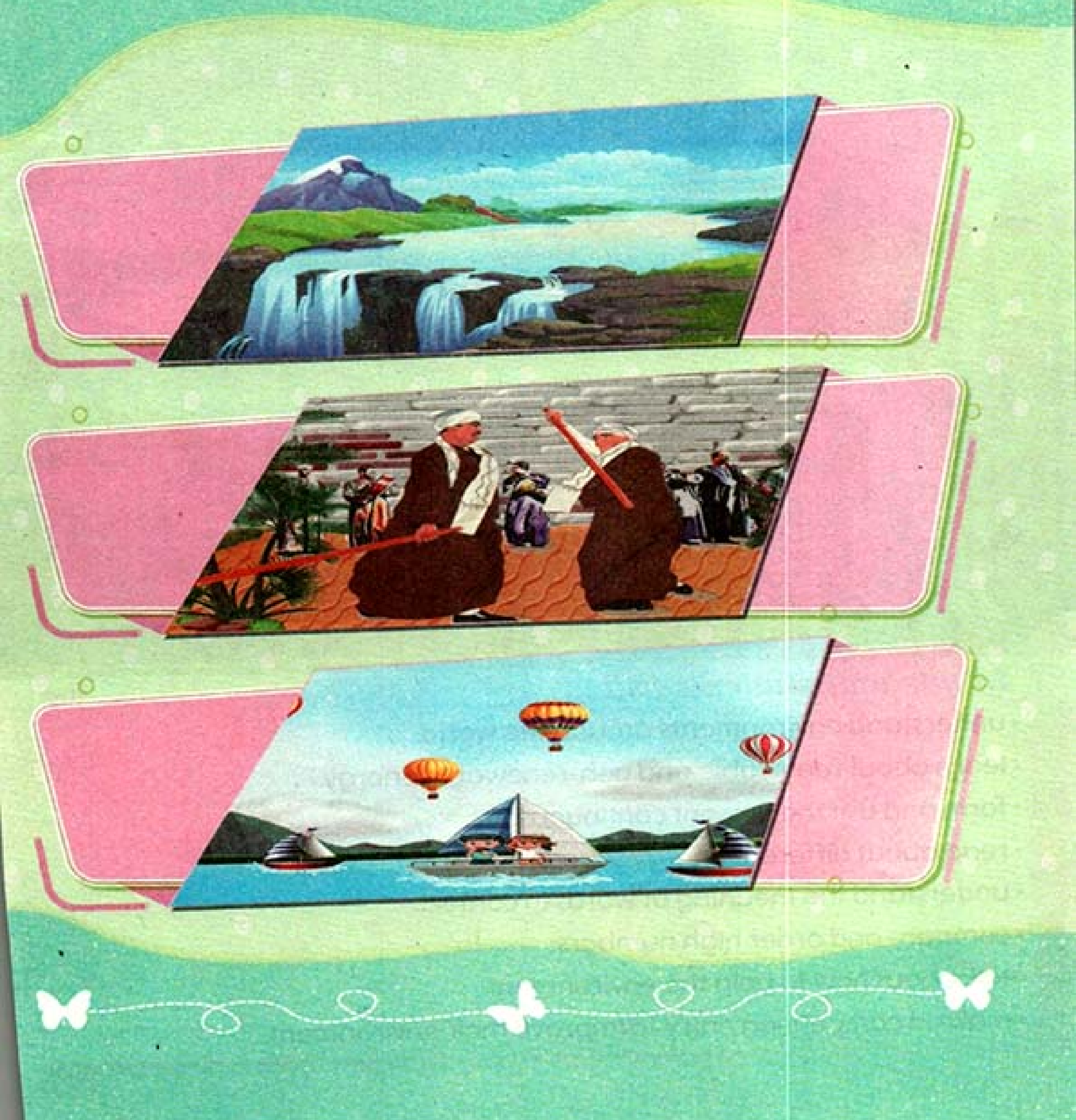
Second Term



Contents

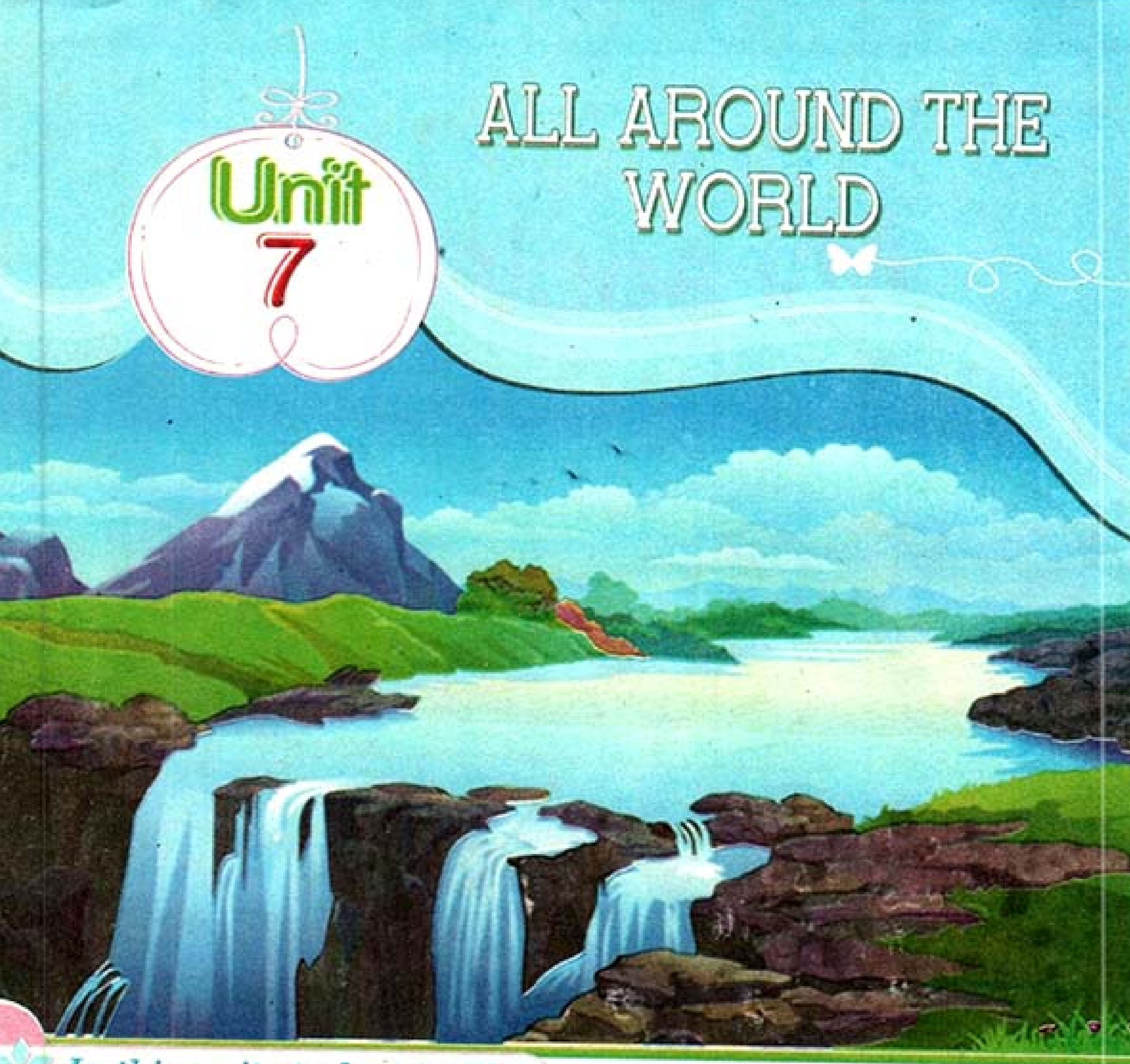


Theme (3)
My society



Unit 7

ALL AROUND THE WORLD



In this unit students will ...

- understand environments around the world.
- learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.
- form and use the present continuous.
- read about different energy sources.
- understand the meaning of words in context.
- compare and order high numbers.
- talk about how to help the environment.
- make a competition entry to improve their environment.



Our world

Key vocabulary Listen and repeat.

Environments
البيئات



coastal
بيئة ساحلية



desert
بيئة صحراوية



mountainous
بيئة جبلية



urban
بيئة مدنية / حضرية



polar
بيئة قطبية



rural
بيئة ريفية



rainforest
بيئة استوائية

Help your child identify different environments.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على البيئات المختلفة

Unit (7) Lesson (1)

Extra Vocabulary

reptiles	زواحف	The Nile Delta	دلتا النيل
swamps	مستنقعات	sparsely populated	قليلة السكان
dry	جاف	densely populated	مكتظة بالسكان
continent	قارة	metropolitan	عاصمي(متعلق بالعاصمة)
traffic	المرور	Antarctic	منطقة القطب الجنوبي
mammals	ثدييات	Arctic	منطقة القطب الشمالي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
survive	ينجو/ يعيش	survived

Present		Past
rain	تمطر	rained
find	يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lots of	كثير من	have to	يجب أن
special ways	طرق خاصة	travel around	يسافر حول

Did you know?

The Amazon covers 40% of South America and is the world's largest rainforest. The second largest is the Congo in Africa.

It is harder to get enough oxygen when you breathe at the top of a high mountain. If you aren't used to being in the mountains ,it can make you sick!



Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Read, then answer the questions.

1 rainforest

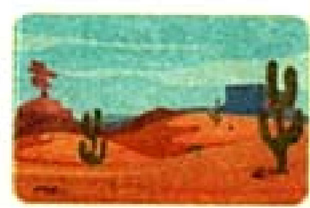


There are lots of trees, plants and flowers here. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.

2 coastal

This environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

3 desert



It is very dry in this environment. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water, You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

4 rural

There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated.
It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

5 polar

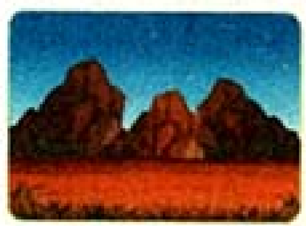


There are two of these environments in the world:
The Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy here, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live here, but there aren't any trees or flowers.

6 urban

This is a metropolitan area which is densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

7 mountainous



It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the weather can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to survive.

Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) There is always a beach in a costal environment. ( )
2) There are polar environments on every continent. ( )
3) An urban environment is a quiet place to live. ( )



1 Listen and complete.

1. There are lots of ...., plants and flowers there.
2. Lots of .... live in the rainforest.
3. It often .... in the rainforest.
4. The .... is hot there.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

weather - plants - sparsely - rural

There aren't many houses or buildings in the ....(1)............ environment so this place often has more animals and ....(2)........ . Not many people live there, so it is ....(3).............. populated. It can have lots of different kinds of ....(4)........, but it's a quiet place to live.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

The desert is very dry. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The desert environment is very (wet - rainy - snowy - dry).
2. The Nile Delta is a (desert - coastal - urban - rural) environment.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the coastal environment?

....

4. What is the weather like in the desert?

....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 is - a quiet - The - to - place - live - environment - rural - .

....

2 is - a beach - There - always - environment - a coastal - in - .

....

3 kind of - do - you - What - in - live - environment - ?

....

5 Choose the correct word.

1 The (country - desert - coastal - rural) environment has little water.
2 The (urban - rural - coastal - polar) environment is noisy and has a lot of traffic.
3 There are no trees or flowers in the (rural - urban - coastal - polar) environment.
4 It's hard for people and animals to survive in a (coastal - mountainous - urban - rural) environment.
5 There are often more animals than people in a (rural - urban - coastal - polar) environment.

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Rainforest environment"

Guiding words:

(Rainforest - rains - hot - insects and birds - temperature)

....

....

....

....

....

LANGUAGE

Lesson (2)

Definitions

climate change	when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time تغير المناخ
air pollution	when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick تلوث الهواء
water pollution	when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic تلوث الماء
fuel	this is something we burn to make heat or power وقود
carbon dioxide	a gas in the atmosphere known as CO_2. It can be dangerous when there is too much in the air غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
emissions	these are made, for example by factories, cars and lorries, they can cause air pollution إنبعاثات

Vocabulary

forest fires (WB)	حرائق الغابات	recycled plastic	بلاستيك معاد تصنيعه
chemicals (WB)	مواد كيميائية	volcanic eruptions (WB)	ثوران بركاني
pollution	تلوث	podcast	إذاعة صوتية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
talk	يتكلم	talked
try	يحاول	tried
appear	يظهر	appeared
use	يستخدم	used
pick up	يلتقط	picked up

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned
drive	يقود	drove
burn	يحترق	burnt
wear	يرتدي	wore

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



The Present Continuous Tense

Form:

I	+	am	
He / She / It / A singular noun	+	is	+ (v+ing)
We / You / They / A plural noun	+	are	

e.g. I'm walking to school.

e.g. He is waiting for the bus.

e.g. They're driving electric cars.

Usage:

To express an action that is happening now.

يستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء مستمرة تحدث الآن.

Spelling rules:

⇨ Verbs that end with (e), we omit (e) before adding (ing).

- take → taking
- drive → driving

⇨ Verbs that end with (one vowel + one consonant), we double the consonant before adding (ing).

- swim → swimming
- put → putting

Keywords:

now الآن	Listen! استمع!	at the moment في هذه اللحظة
Look! انظر!	today اليوم	at present في الوقت الحاضر

Help your child identify and use the present continuous tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على و يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر

Negative:

I	+ am		
He / She / It / A singular noun	+ is	+ not + (v+ing)	
They / We / You / A plural noun	+ are		

e.g. I am not using recycled bags.

e.g. They aren't walking to school.

e.g. He isn't watching a TV program.

Yes / No questions:

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Is he walking to school?

Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Are they watching a TV program?

Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

Wh- questions:

Q.W + is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. What is he doing now?

He is driving an electric car.



Q.W + are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. What are you doing?

I am walking to school.



Help your child identify and use the present continuous tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على و يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر

Read and learn.

These people are helping to stop pollution[1]. They are on a beach and they are picking up garbage. The garbage [2] can be dirty, so they are wearing gloves. They are putting the plastic in bags so it doesn't go into the sea.



1. تلوث 2. قمامة



Rewrite Corner

1. They help to stop pollution. (helping)

⇨ They are helping to stop pollution.

2. She is reading an article about the environment. (not)

⇨ She isn't reading an article about the environment.

3. Yes, we are learning about climate change. (Are ...?)

⇨ Are you learning about climate change?

4. Tarek is listening to a podcast. (What ...?)

⇨ What is Tarek doing?

1 Choose the correct word.

1. Today, we're (talk - talks - talking - talked) about pollution.
2. What (are we - we are - have we - can we) doing to stop pollution?
3. I am (walk - walked - walking - walks) to school now.
4. Now, he (wait - waited - is waiting - waits) for the bus.
5. What is he (does - do - did - doing) now?



2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 He drives an electric car. (now)

....

2 Tarek is listening to a podcast. (isn't)

....

3 Yes, we are helping to stop pollution. (Are ...?)

....

4 She is wearing gloves. (What ...?)

....

3 Look and write a sentence in the present continuous.



Hana / watch / a TV program

....



I / walk / to school

....



Tarek / listen to / a podcast

....



They / wear / gloves

....



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

putting - dirty - picking - wearing

These people are helping to stop pollution. They are on a beach and they are ....(1)...... up garbage. The garbage can be ....(2)........... ,so they are ....(3).......... gloves. They are ....(4).......... the plastic in bags, so it doesn't go into the sea.

2 Choose the correct word.

1. Scientists (is finding - are finding - finding - finds) new ways to travel and to use fuels.
2. They are (tries - try - tried - trying) to make our world a cleaner place.
3. I (am - is - are - were) using recycled plastic.
4. Today, we (learned - learn - learning - are learning) about climate change.
5. Are they (drive - drives - driving - drove) electric cars?
6. Look! Hana (watch - is watching - watching - watched) a TV program.
7. What are you (reads - reading - read - to read)?
8. She is (wear - wears - wearing - wore) gloves.
9. (You are - Are you - He is - She is) picking up garbage?
10. They aren't (puts - putting - put - to put) plastic in bags.
11. They (isn't - aren't - don't - doesn't) picking up the garbage.
12. Now, I (travel - traveled - am traveling - travels) in an electric car.

13 Are you (read - reads - reading - to read) an article about climate change?

14 We're (cleans - cleaned - clean - cleaning) the beach because it is full of plastic.

15 Scientists are (discovering - discover - discovered - discovers) new forms of renewable energy.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 are - What - discussing - they - ?

....

2 about - We - pollution - talking - are - .

....

3 school - walking - I - to - am - .

....

4 about - learning - They - climate change - are - .

....

5 is - What - stop - he - doing - pollution - to - ?

....

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Pollution"

Guiding words:

(air pollution - carbon dioxide - dirty - water pollution - chemicals)

....

....

....

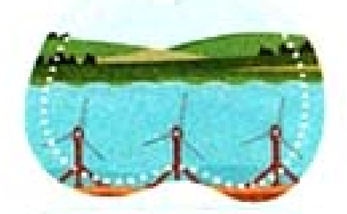
....

Lesson (3)

ENERGY AROUND US

Key vocabulary

Listen and repeat.



tidal energy
طاقة المد والجزر

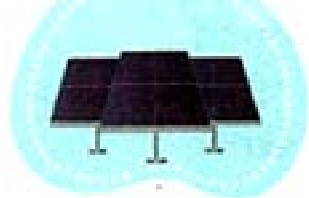


geothermal energy
الطاقة الحراية (المنبعثة من باطن الأرض)



wind energy
طاقة الرياح

Renewable energy
طاقة متجددة



solar energy
الطاقة الشمسية

Non-renewable energy
طاقة غير متجددة



oil
بترول



gas
غاز



coal
فحم



fossil fuels
وقود حفري

Help your child identify renewable and non-renewable energy.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة

Unit (7) Lesson (3)

Definitions

turbine (n)	a machine to make energy	توربين
tide (n)	when the level of the sea gets higher or lower	المد والجزر
generate (v)	to make something	يولّد
store (v)	to keep something	يخزّن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
burn	يحترق	burned
release into	يطلق في	released into
store	يخزن	stored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
keep	يحفظ	kept
run out	ينفد	ran out
make	يصنع	made
blow	تهب	blew



Reading Tips!

- Sometimes when we read a text, we find words which we don't understand. Look at the rest of the words in the sentence carefully. They can help you understand the new word.

  أحيانًا عندما نقرأ نصا نجد كلمات لا نستطيع فهمها. انظر لباقي الكلمات في الجملة بعناية فهذا يساعدك على فهم الكلمة الجديدة.

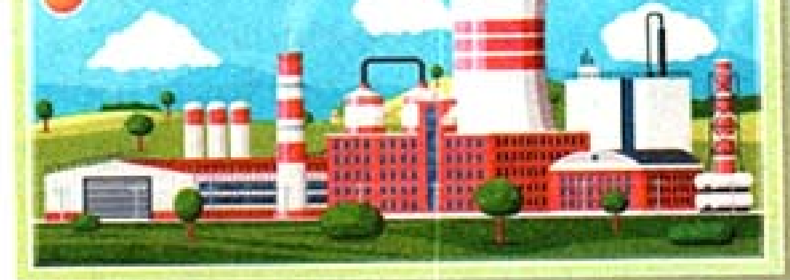
- Look at how a new word is used in a sentence and decide if it is a verb or a noun. This helps you guess the meaning of new words.

  انظر إلى استخدام الكلمة الجديدة في الجملة وحدد إذا كانت اسم أم فعل. سيساعدك هذا على تخمين معنى الكلمات الجديدة.

 Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Read the text.

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas, and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However,They are non-renewable: when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains[1] of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere[2].



There are other kinds of energy we can use which are renewable: they don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources[3] such as the wind,the sun, water and heat[4] inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run[5], they are better.

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels[6] that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast.

In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. You can store this energy, so if the sun isn't shining or the wind isn't blowing,we will still have electricity[7]!

In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water.

In the future, we need to get more of our energy from renewable sources, and less from non-renewable sources.

1. بقايا	2. الغلاف الجوي	3. مصادر طبيعية	4. الحرارة
5. على المدى الطويل	6. ألواح شمسية	7. كهرباء	

Answer the following questions.

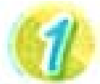
1) What are fossil fuels made from?

....

2) Why is a coastal environment a good place for wind energy?

....





Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

remains - renewable - What - oil

Sara : How many kinds of energy are there?
Toka : There are two kinds: ....(1)............ and non-renewable.
Sara : ....(2)............ are fossil fuels?
Toka : They are things like coal, gas and ....(3)............ .
Sara : What are fossil fuels made from?
Toka : They are made from the ....(4)............ of very old plants and animals.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. A hot desert is a good place to get (solar - tidal - wind - geothermal) energy.
2. A coastal environment can get a lot of (snow - ice - wind - sun) .

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where can you find solar panels?

....

4. How can we use tidal energy?

....

3 Choose the correct word.

1. Fossil fuels are (modern - renewable - non-renewable - new) energy.
2. Solar energy comes from the (wind - sun - water - moon).
3. (Tidal - Solar - Wind - Geothermal) energy uses the movement of the sea to make energy.
4. To (make - play - store - stare) is to keep something.
5. We use (cars - turbines - planes - bridges) to make electricity.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - fossil - What - fuels - from - made - ?

....

2. store - You - can - energy - electrical - .

....

3. doesn't - Renewable - out - energy - run - .

....

4. get - from - resources - We - can - renewable - natural - energy - .

....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Energy around us"

Guiding words:

(renewable energy - solar energy - wind energy - run out - clean - non-renewable - pollution - coal - gas)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4)

WRITING: HOW TO WRITE A REPORT

Key Vocabulary

spring	ينبوع ماء	volcano	بركان
steam	بخار	engineer	مهندس - مهندسة
hydroelectricity	طاقة كهرومائية	generator	مولد (كهرباء)
flooding	فيضان	the High Dam	السد العالي
moving	تحرك	tunnel (WB)	نفق
farming	الزراعة	reservoir (WB)	خزان ماء
machine	آلة - ماكينة	important	هام

Definitions

location	a place or a position	موقع
kilowatt	a unit for measuring electrical power	كيلووات
waterwheel	a wheel with buckets used to raise water	ساقية الماء

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

more than	أكثر من	come from	يأتي من
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	stop... from	يمنع.....من
change to	يتحول إلى	the location of	موقع
mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية	water tunnels	أنفاق مائية
come up (came up)	يرتفع	making food	صناعة الطعام

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



Writing tip!



A report is a way to give information about a topic. It often has these features.

التقرير: طريقة لإعطاء معلومات عن موضوع و غالبًا ما يكون له هذه السمات.

A title- this tells you what the report is about.

العنوان الرئيسي: وهذا يخبرك عن موضوع التقرير.

Photos- these illustrate the report and make it look interesting. A photo can help explain what you mean.

الصور: وهي توضح التقرير وتجعله شيقًا. الصورة تساعدك على شرح ما تقصده.

Subtitles- these break down the information into smaller sections by topic.

العناوين الفرعية: تجزأ المعلومات لأقسام أصغر.

Facts and figures- a report uses these to show that information is true.

الحقائق والأشكال وتستخدم في التقرير لتوضيح صحة المعلومات.

Report: Geothermal energy, Iceland



Why Iceland?

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.

How does it work?

When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity.

Why is it important?

100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

Read and write T (True) or (False).

1) Iceland is a hot country. (   )
2) There is a lot of hot water underground. (   )
3) 50% of Iceland's electricity and heat comes from renewable sources. (   )

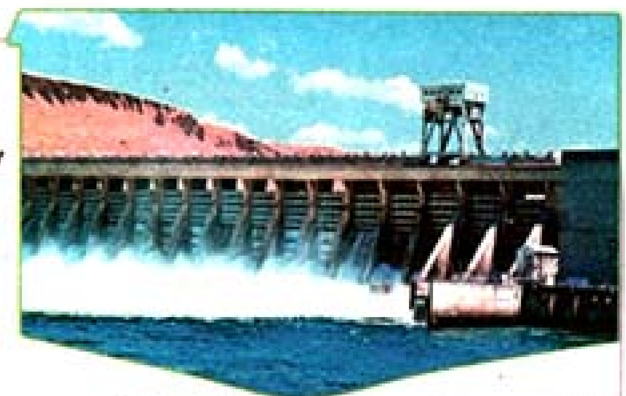
Help your child read about different energy sources.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة

Unit (7) Lesson (4)

Read the text.

Hydroelectricity



People have used hydroelectricity (also called hydropower) for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity.

The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn waterwheels.

The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

Now, we can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity. A hydroelectric dam uses the energy in falling water to turn a turbine. The mechanical energy of the moving turbine is changed to electrical energy by a generator.

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The dam has twelve large turbines inside.

It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

Read again and answer the questions.

1) What is hydroelectricity mean?

....

2) What did the ancient Egyptians use the energy to?

....

3) Where is the High Dam?

....



Help your child read about different energy sources.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مصادر الطاقة المختلفة



1 Listen and complete.

1 Iceland is a .... country.
2 It has more than 600 hot ....
3 There is a lot of .... water underground.
4 The hot water underground is used to make ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

waterwheels - High Dam - Hydroelectricity - electricity

People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. ....(1).......... means using the energy from moving water to generate ....(2).......... . The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn ....(3).......... . The ....(4).......... uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity.

3 Choose the correct word.

1 A (title - photo - subtitle - figure) tells you what the report is about.
2 (Titles - Subtitles - Facts - Photos) illustrate the report and make it look interesting.
3 A report uses (facts and figures - titles - photos - subtitles) to show that information is true.
4 When water gets hot, it makes (ice - snow - steam - electricity).
5 100% of Iceland's electricity and heat comes from (non- renewable - renewable - rural - urban) sources.
6 The ancient Egyptians used the energy in moving water to turn (bicycles - waterwheels - cars - boats).
7 A (kilowatt - kilogram - gram - kilometer) is a unit for measuring electrical power.
8 The waterwheel is a wheel with buckets used to raise (food - electricity - heat - water) .

9 The (view - statues - weather - position) of Aswan made it a good place to build the High Dam.

10 We can use hydropower to generate (water - food - electricity - houses).

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 is - Iceland - country - a - cold - .

....

2 has - 600 - springs - hot - Iceland - more than - .

....

3 is - the High - Why - important - Dam - ?

....

4 was - How - hydroelectricity - in - used - the past - ?

....

5 in - finished - The High Dam - 1971 - was - .

....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Hydroelectricity"

Guiding words:

(used - in the past - generate - electricity - clean - renewable - High Dam - Aswan)

....

....

....

....

....



- CLIL: MATH: COMPARING AND ORDERING HIGH NUMBERS
- PROJECT

Key Vocabulary

article	مقال	public parks	حدائق عامة
tonne	الطن (وحدة وزن)	average	متوسط
humans	البشر	planet	كوكب
cells	خلايا	protecting	حماية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted
cause	يسبب	caused
waste	يهدر	wasted
absorb	يمتص	absorbed
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave
understand	يفهم	understood
beat	يدق	beat
take out	يُخرج	took out
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

You're right.	أنت محق.	home for	موطن لـ
make the air cleaner	يجعل الهواء أكثر نقاءً	important to	مهم أن
look really nice	تبدو جميلة حقًا	That's amazing!	هذا مذهل!
a good way to	طريقة جيدة لكي	I think	أنا أعتقد

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Unit (7) Lessons (5 &6)

Read the story.



"Listen to this, Mom," said Nessma one day after school.
"This article says that in 2019, Egypt started a project to plant one million trees in public parks and gardens all over the country. That's amazing!"
"You're right," said Mom. "Do you understand why it's important to plant trees?"
Nessma wasn't sure. "They look really nice, don't they? They give us fruit, and they can be homes for animals." "All those things are true, but trees are even more special than that," said Mom. "Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide emissions . This causes air pollution and climate change. But forests can absorb carbon dioxide . That means they take it out of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 billion tonnes of carbon dioxide every year?"
"Wow, that's a lot of carbon dioxide!". said Nessma.
"So trees are really important in protecting our planet!"

Answer the following questions.

1) How many trees did Egypt start to plant?

....

2) Why is it important to plant trees?

....

Help your child identify to talk about how to help the environment.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف كيف يتحدث عن مساعدة البيئة

Math : Large numbers



Smallest

Number	Words	Arabic
1,000	(one thousand)	ألف
10,000	(ten thousand)	عشرة الآف
100,000	(one hundred thousand)	مائة ألف
1,000,000	(one million)	مليون
10,000,000	(ten million)	عشرة مليون
100,000,000	(one hundred million)	مائة مليون
1,000,000,000	(one billion)	مليار

Largest



1 Put these numbers in order from smallest to largest.

a 10,000 [ ]　　c 1,000 [ ]

b 1,000,000 [ ]　　d 100,000 [ ]

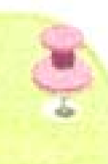
2 Read and match.

1	10,000,000	a	one billion
2	1,000,000	b	one hundred million
3	100,000,000	c	ten million
4	1,000,000,000	d	one million

1- (　)　　2- (　)　　3- (　)　　4- (　)

Help your child compare and order high numbers.

ساعد طفلك أن يقارن ويرتب الأرقام الكبيرة



Expressions for replying and giving opinion





- I agree. موافق
- Yes, you're right. نعم، أنت محق

- I'm not sure. لست متأكداً
- But I think..... لكن أنا أعتقد ....

I disagree. غير موافق




A


B



1. What can our country do to help the environment? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy.

2. I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.

3. Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.

4. And what can I do to help the environment? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drops garbage.

5. Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste electricity.



Help your child talk about how to help the environment.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف كيف يتحدث عن مساعدة البيئة



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

take - article - help - plant

Sara : What are you doing, Mai?

Mai : I'm reading an .... (1) .... about helping the environment.

Sara : What can our country do to ......(2) .... the environment?

Mai : Egypt started a project to .... (3) .... one million trees in public parks.

Sara : Why is it important to plant trees ?

Mai : Because they .... (4) .... out carbon dioxide of the atmosphere.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our town is a great place to live, but what can we do to make the environment better? We want more green spaces to play in. Our country can help by planting more trees. It can also help by using more renewable energy. We shouldn't drop garbage or waste electricity. We can recycle plastic and paper.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 Our town is a great place to live. ( )

2 Our country can't protect the environment. ( )

B) Answer the following questions.

3 How can our country help make the environment better?

....

4 What shouldn't we do to help the environment?

....



3 Choose the correct word.

1 I think you (is - am - are - was) right.
2 We shouldn't (drop - drops - dropped - dropping) garbage.
3 Why is it important (in - of - at - to) plant trees?
4 Forests can (absorb - store - give - take) carbon dioxide.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 is - it - Why - to - important - trees - plant - ?

....

2 am - sure - I - not - .

....

3 help - to - Forests - environment - protect - the - .

....

4 drop - garbage - We - shouldn't - .

....

5 Order these numbers from largest to smallest.

2,000 / 10,000 / 100,000 / 1,000 / 1,000,000

.... / .... / .... / .... / ....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"How to keep the environment"

Guiding words:
(keep - clean - plant - drop - garbage - renewable energy - protect forests - turn off lights)

....
....
....
....
....

Review on Unit (7)

Environments البيئات

coastal	ساحلية	desert	صحراوية	urban	حضرية
mountainous	جبلية	rural	قروية / ريفية	polar	قطبية
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	temperature	درجة الحرارة	difficult	صعبة

Pollution التلوث

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	water pollution	تلوث الماء
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	climate change	تغير المناخ
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	emissions	انبعاثات

Energy الطاقة

Renewable	متجددة	Non-renewable	غير متجددة
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	coal	فحم
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز
tidal energy	طاقة المد و الجزر	oil	بترول
geothermal energy	الطاقة الحرارية (المنبعثة من باطن الأرض)		

Other words

generate (d)	يولد	store (d)	يخزن	absorb (ed)	يمتص
hydroelectricity	طاقة كهرومائية	release (d)	يطلق	heat	حرارة
waterwheels	السواقي	take out	يخرج	turbine	توربين

Large Numbers

1,000 (one thousand)	10,000 (ten thousand)
100,000 (one hundred thousand)	1,000,000 (one million)
10,000,000 (ten million)	100,000,000 (one hundred million)
1,000,000,000 (one billion)	

Help your child revise unit (7). ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة



The Present Continuous Tense

Form:

Subject + am / is / are + (v + ing)

e.g. I'm walking to school.

Usage: To express an action that is happening now.

Key words:

now الآن	Listen! استمع!	at the moment في هذه اللحظة
Look! انظر!	today اليوم	at present في الوقت الحاضر

Negative:

Subject + am / is / are + not + (v + ing)

e.g. I am not using recycled bags.

Yes / No question:

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Is he walking to school? Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Are they watching a TV program? Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + is/are + subject + (v+ing)...?

e.g. What is he doing now?

He is driving an electric car.



"Different environments"



In our world, there are different environments like coastal, desert, rural, urban and polar environments. In coastal environments, there are beaches, The Nile Delta and the Red Sea are two examples of this environment. Desert environment is very dry. The animals and plants that live there have to find ways to survive without a lot of water.

"Pollution"

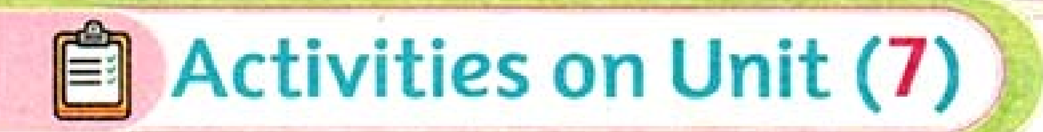


There are different kinds of pollution. Water pollution happens when it is dirty because of chemicals or plastic. Carbon dioxide can be dangerous when there is too much in the air. Emissions that are made by factories, cars and lorries cause air pollution. We should keep the air clean by planting more trees.

"Energy around us"



There are two kinds of energy: renewable and non-renewable energy. Non-renewable energy are like coal, gas and oil. They run out. They pollute the environment. Renewable energy like solar, wind, tidal and geothermal energies . They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources. They are better than non-renewable energy.



Activities on Unit (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. Our country can help by using (more - less- little - the least) renewable energy.
2. We should use (more - much- many - less) fossil fuel.
3. Our country can (plant - destroy - damage - cut) more trees.
4. We should (cut down - damage - protect - eat) the forests we have.

2 Listen and complete.

1. The desert is very ....
2. Animals have to find .... ways to survive in the desert.
3. Desert can be .... or cold.
4. There are .... and plants there.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

take - important - absorb - billion

Carbon dioxide emissions cause air pollution and climate change. But forests can ....(1).......... carbon dioxide. That means they ....(2).......... it out of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 ....(3).......... tonnes of carbon dioxide every year?
That's a lot of carbon dioxide, so trees are really ....(4).......... in protecting our planet!

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity. When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity. 100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Iceland is a (hot - cold - snowy - rainy) country.

2 Iceland has about (6000 - 6600 - 600 - 60000) hot springs.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What can engineers in Iceland make?

....

4 Where do electricity and heat come from in Iceland?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. (   )

2 Amir took the laundry up to the roof. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 Amir could see plastic bottles floating down on the (sink - river - road - sea).

4 Amir took the (dishes - bottles - laundry - bags) up to the roof.

6 Choose the correct word.

1. They are (helps - helped - help - helping) to stop pollution.
2. Look! He (picks - picking - is picking - pick) up the garbage.
3. What (are - is - am - do) they discussing?
4. We are (wears - wearing - wear - wore) gloves.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - talking - pollution - We - about - .

....

2. machine - A turbine - make - to - is - a - energy - .

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Polar environment"

Guiding words:

(Polar - cold - windy - Arctic - Antarctic - ice - any trees - flowers)

....

....

....

....

....

....

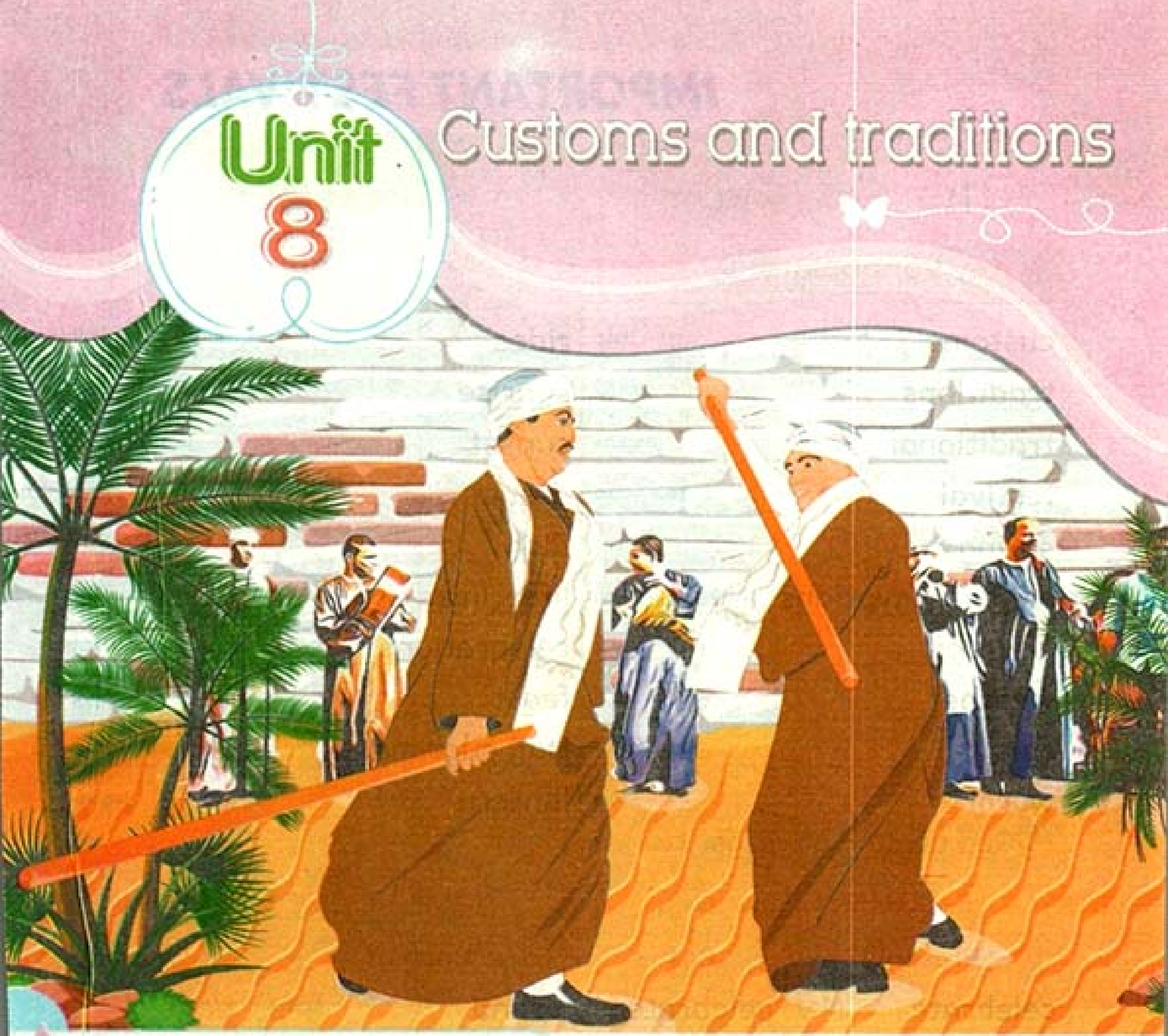
....

....

....

....

Unit 8 Customs and traditions



In this unit students will ...

- understand some traditional celebrations.
- learn about some traditional recipes.
- compare the present simple and present continuous.
- understand a conversation about clothes.
- read about Egypt's traditions.
- understand and write a tourist brochure.
- learn about traditional fables.
- write a story.

Lesson (1) IMPORTANT FESTIVALS

Key Vocabulary

customs	عادات	rides	ألعاب (في الملاهي)
traditions	تقاليد	sunrise	شروق الشمس
traditional	تقليدي	sunset	غروب الشمس
festival	عيد - مهرجان	dream	حلم
spring	فصل الربيع	dish	طبق - أكلة
ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	life - lives	حياة - حيوات
creation	خلق / ابتكار	celebrations	احتفالات
weather	الطقس	feast	وليمة
sunny	مشمس	Hajj pilgrimage	فريضة الحج
warm	دافئ	lantern	فانوس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
mark	يميز	marked
prepare	يجهز	prepared
boil	يغلي - يسلق	boiled
paint	يلون	painted
decorate	يزين	decorated
last for	يستمر لمدة	lasted for
sacrifice	يضحي	sacrificed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
spend	يقضي	spent
give out	يوزع	gave out
wear	يرتدي	wore
come up	تشرق	came up
go down	تغيب (الشمس)	went down
stick	يلصق	stuck
hang	يعلق	hung



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي	glass jar	برطمان زجاج
get ready	يستعد	on the side	على الجانب
at sunrise	عند شروق الشمس	electric candle	شمعة كهربية
play music	يعزف موسيقى	front door	الباب الأمامي
in different colors	بألوان مختلفة	make a lantern	يصنع فانوسًا
mid-July	منتصف شهر يوليو	Islamic festival	عيد إسلامي
spend (time) + v+ing	يقضي وقتًا	love + (v+ing)	يحب

Definitions تعريفات

celebrate	to spend time with others, being happy and having fun	يحتفل
grateful	feeling that you want to thank someone	ممتن - شاكر
prayer	important words which you say to give thanks or ask for help	دعاء - صلاة
give out	to offer something	يوزع
fairgrounds	an open area of land where people can enjoy rides	الملاهي - ساحات الألعاب
sunrise	when the sun comes up in the morning	شروق الشمس
sunset	when the sun goes down at night	غروب الشمس



Unit (8) Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

Sham El-Nessim [1]

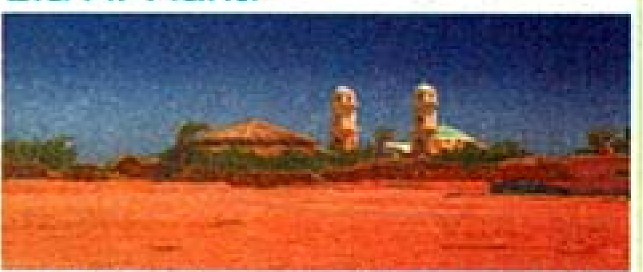


I love celebrating[2] Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation[3] and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter[4] Monday.

Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise[5] to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games. Sometimes there are fairgrounds with rides[6] for children - they are a lot of fun!

Before the day of the festival,[7] we spend time preparing lots of different traditional food[8], often until sunset! We also boil eggs, then paint and decorate[9] them in different colors to make them look beautiful.

Eid Al-Adha[10]



Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for[11] four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates[12] the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice[13] a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out[14] meat to our family and friends.

During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers[15] and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents[16] and we have a feast together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage [17].

1. شم النسيم	2. احتفال	3. خلق	4. عيد الفصح	5. شروق الشمس	6. ألعاب في الملاهي
7. عيد	8. طعام تقليدي	9. يزين	10. عيد الأضحى	11. يستمر لمدة	12. يحتفل
13. يضحي	14. يوزع	15. الصلاة	16. هدايا	17. الحج	

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

Look and read.

This year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I washed a glass jar and stuck some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and bright in the night time!



Did you know?

The ancient Egyptians had many festivals. Wepet Renpet was a festival marking the beginning of a new year. It celebrated the first flooding of the Nile. The ancient Egyptians celebrated it around mid-July.

كان لدى المصريين القدماء أعياد كثيرة. وكان عيد «وبت رنبت» يمثل بداية العام الجديد. وكان يحتفل بالفيضان الأول لنهر النيل. كان المصريون القدماء يحتفلون به في منتصف شهر يوليو تقريبًا.

Read and write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences.

1) People paint and decorate eggs during Sham El- Nessim. (   )

....

2) During Eid Al-Adha, people don't eat or drink anything between sunrise and sunset. (   )

....

3) People go to the mosque for prayers during Eid Al-Adha. (   )

....

4) Sham El-Nessim celebrates the start of summer. (   )

....

5) People give meat to family and friends during Sham El-Nessim. (   )

....



1 Choose the correct word.

1. Sham El-Nessim marks the beginning of (Ramadan - spring - fall - winter).
2. We give out (meat - fish - rice - onions) in Eid Al-Adha.
3. Sham El-Nessim is always on (Friday - Tuesday - Monday - Sunday).
4. I always wake up at (sunrise - sunset - afternoon - morning).
5. At Eid Al-Adha, people sacrifice a (cat - sheep - bird - monkey).
6. We go to the mosque for (celebrating - playing - prayers - money).
7. We should be (great - grateful - helpful - bad) to Allah for all the good things.
8. I made a special (lamp - light - lantern - jar) for Ramadan.
9. Wepet Renpet celebrated flooding of the (Nile - sea - lake - Red Sea).
10. I went to the (school - playground - fairgrounds - library) and enjoyed many rides.

2 Read and match.

1 celebrate	a to offer something
2 give out	b where people can enjoy rides
3 grateful	c to spend time with others and have fun
4 fairgrounds	d words you say to give thanks or ask for help

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

3 Fill in the spaces with:

sacrifice - prayers - lasts - give

Eid Al-Adha usually ....(1).......... for four days. Many people ....(2).......... a sheep and eat a traditional dish called fatta. We go to the mosque for ....(3).......... and be grateful to Allah.



4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life.
Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games. Sometimes there are fairgrounds with rides for children - they are a lot of fun!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Sham El-Nessim always comes on (Saturday - Monday - Friday - Tuesday).
2. Children can have fun at the (school - hospital - fair - fairgrounds).

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Sham El-Nessim mark?

....

4. What's the weather like at Sham El-Nessim?

....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Your lantern"

Guiding words:

(Ramadan - special - jar - candle - hung - pretty)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (2)

GRANDMA'S RECIPES

Key vocabulary

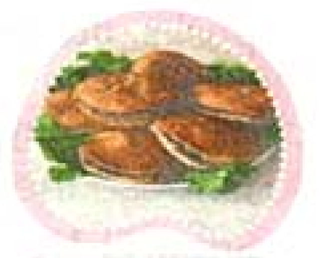
Look, listen and read.

Dishes أكلات


Ful Medames
فول مدمس


Sayadeya
سمك صيادية


Fatta
فتة


Hawawshi
حواوشي

Traditional Food طعام تقليدى


olive oil
زيت زيتون


herbs
أعشاب


beans
فول


garlic
ثوم


spices
توابل


vinegar
خل


pastry
فطيرة (معجنات)



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Extra Vocabulary

cook book	كتاب الطهي	lamb	لحم الضأن
recipe	وصفة - طريقة	beef	لحم البقر
meals	وجبات	carefully	بعناية
difficult	صعب	well	جيدًا
tomato sauce	صلصة طماطم	easily	بسهولة
tomb	مقبرة	delicious	لذيذ
paintings	لوحات	chilli	فلفل حار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
show	يبين	showed
digest	يهضم	digested
press	يضغط	pressed
bake	يخبز	baked

Present		Past
describe	يصف	described
try	يجرب	tried
make	يصنع	made
sit	يجلس	sat

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make a meal	يعد وجبة
her own book	كتابها الخاص بها
share recipes	يشارك الوصفات
made with	مصنوع من (مكونات)



Listen and read.

Grandma's Cook Book

Aya was visiting her grandma. Grandma was making a meal, and Aya was sitting in the kitchen looking carefully at Grandma's books. Grandma cooked very well and she had her own cook book. It described different meals and had pictures of delicious food.

"Wow, Grandma," said Aya. "You have lots of different meals[1] in your book!"

"Yes, I do," said Grandma. "I often share recipes[2] with family and friends in other parts of Egypt. I like to try new things."

"These look delicious! Can you make all of these?"

"Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too! What would you like to make?"

"Hmm, that's difficult," said Aya. "There are so many recipes to choose from!"

Read about the meals in Grandma's cook book.

Ful Medames



This dish uses beans[3] cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread.

Fatta



Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest[4], so we don't eat it very often.

Hawawshi



Hawawshi is delicious. It is made with bread and beef or lamb. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs and spices. The bread is pressed[5] together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad.

Sayadeya



People who live near the coast[6] often make sayadeya. We use fish, which is baked in the oven with olive oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices. It's delicious!

1. وجبات 2. وصفات 3. فول 4. يهضم 5. يضغط 6. الساحل

Answer the following questions.

1. Which dish doesn't use any meat? ....
2. Which dish do people near the coast eat? ....
3. What is hawawshi made with? ....

Help your child read about different meals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الوجبات المختلفة



Did you know?



Bread was important in ancient Egypt. There are paintings in the tomb of Ty in Saqqara which show how people made it.

Remember

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

- They tell us how often we do something. تخبرنا بعدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

always	■■■■■■■	= at all times
usualiy	■■■■■□□	= most often
often	■■■■□□□	= many times
sometimes	■■■□□□□	= now and then
never	□□□□□□□	= at no time

- We always eat hawawshi with bread.
- Ful medames never has any meat in it.
- We sometimes eat hawawshi with salad.

Adverbs of manner ظروف الطريقة

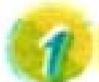
They describe how we do something. تصف كيف نقوم بالأشياء.

- Aya was looking carefully at Grandma's book.
- Grandma cooked very well.
- I can easily show you.

Choose the correct word.

1. People who live near the coast (never - often - ever - rarely) eat sayadeya.
2. Grandma cooks (bad - good - well - happy), I like her food.
3. We (always - usually - never - sometimes) go to school on Friday.
4. I can read English (easily - easy - good - nice).
5. We (always - never - sometimes - often) eat Ful medames with bread.

Exercises



1 Read and complete the following dialog with:

Yes - What - making

Aya : What are you doing, Grandma?
Grandma : I'm ....(1).................. a meal.
Aya : ....(2).................. is it called?
Grandma : It's called fatta.
Aya : Is it delicious?
Grandma : ....(3).........., it is. I can show you.

2 Fill in the spaces with:

olive - sayadeya - fish - meat

People who live near the coast often make ....(1).......... . We use ....(2).........., which is baked in the oven with ....(3).......... oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs and spices. It's delicious.

3 Choose the correct word.

1. People don't eat fatta very (always - often - never - every) because it's difficult to digest.
2. I (take - play - share - give) recipes with family and friends.
3. We (always - never - just - last) eat ful medames with bread.
4. At Eid Al-Adha, we always eat (sayadeya - fatta - ful medames - fish).
5. Press the bread (carefully - easily - quickly - slowly) around the meat to make hawawshi.
6. Grandma loves cooking and she cooks (good - well - lazily - badly).

4 Complete the sentences with:

Hawawshi - Bread - cook- ful medames

1. We always eat .... with bread.
2. .... was important in ancient Egypt.
3. Grandma has her own .... book.
4. .... is eaten with salad.

5 Read and match.

1	Hawawshi	a	is made with beans.
2	Fatta	b	is made with beef or lamb.
3	Sayadeya	c	has rice, bread and meat.
4	Ful medames	d	has fish, tomatoes and onions.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Your favorite dish"

Guiding words:

(fatta - rice - bread - sauce - Eid Al-Adha - digest)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

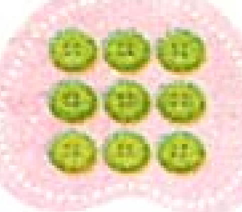
Lesson (3)

LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

Look, listen and say.


T-shirt
قميص (تي شيرت)


buttons
أزرار


linen
الكتان


galabeya
جلابية


Traditional Clothes
ملابس تقليدية


jewelry
حُلي / مجوهرات


sandals
صندل


sleeve
كم


hizam
حزام

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Key Vocabulary

kaftan	قفطان	Eid Al-Fitr	عيدالفطر
dress	فستان	striped	مقلم
skirt	تنورة (جيبة)	different	مختلف
warm	دافئ	the same	نفس (الشئ)
cool	معتدل البرودة	leather	جلد
loose	واسع - فضفاض	vegetarian	شخص نباتي
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	dark colored clothes	ملابس داكنة اللون

Look and read.

- Sandals are a type of shoe. They are sometimes made of leather.



- Jewelry is a type of ornament. زينة

  It's usually made of gold. الذهب



- Kaftan is a type of long belted tunic.

  It's always worn in Arab countries.



- The galabeya is a type of clothes.

  It has long sleeves.



- Linen keeps you cool.



- Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals made of leather.
- The ancient Egyptians wore white clothes.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Unit (8) Lesson (3)

Look and read.



This is Hana. Today she is wearing a blue dress. She usually wears a T-shirt and a skirt, but today is a special[1] day. She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family.

This is Adam. Today he is helping his mom make ful medames. They often eat meat but today they are making a vegetarian[2] recipe.

1. خاص - مميز 2. نباتي

Look and read.



Nadia lives in Luxor with her family. Today she is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr[1] with her family. She is wearing her best dress and new shoes. She usually goes to school on Thursdays, but today is a holiday[2]. The whole family is together. Grandma and Grandpa are sitting in the living room. Nadia's brother Khaled is giving his grandparents some special cakes. Nadia is carrying a plate[3] of cookies[4]. Mom often makes these cookies at Eid Al-Fitr. They are Khaled's favorite! Mom and Dad always give Nadia and Khaled presents[5]. Eid Al-Fitr is Nadia's favorite festival!

1. عيد الفطر 2. أجازة 3. طبق 4. كعك 5. هدايا

Help your child read the texts. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النصوص



The Present Simple Tense

Form:

I / We / You / They / A plural noun	+ inf.
He / She / It / A singular noun	+ inf. + v+(s / es / ies)

e.g. - Men often wear the galabeya.
- Sara wears a skirt every day.

Negative:

I / We / You / They / A plural noun	+ don't	+ inf.
He / She / It / A singular noun	+ doesn't	+ inf.

e.g. - I don't wear kaftan.
- She doesn't wear hizam.

Yes / No question:

Do + I / they / we / you / a plural noun	+ inf. ...?
Does + he / she / it / a singular noun	+ inf. ...?

e.g. - Do you usually wear sandals?

☺ Yes, I do. ☹ No, I don't.

- Does he wear loose clothes?

☺ Yes, he does. ☹ No, he doesn't.

Wh- question:

Q.W	+ do / does	+ subject	+ inf...?

e.g. - What do you wear to do sports?
I wear a T-shirt and shorts.

Unit (8) Lesson (3)

Keywords:

always دائمًا	usually عادة	often غالبًا
never أبدًا	sometimes أحيانًا	every (day,week,...) كل ...

Note:

These adverbs come before the main verb, but after verb to "be"

تأتي هذه الظروف قبل الفعل الأساسي، ولكن بعد «v. to be» أما (every) تأتي في نهاية الجملة أو بدايتها.

e.g. I always go to school early.

e.g. He is never late for school.

e.g. She wears a blue dress every day.

e.g. Every day I go to school.

Comparison between

Present Simple	Present Continuous
It expresses something that is true, or that usually happens. يعبر عن شيء حقيقي أو شيء يحدث عادة.	It expresses something that is happening now. يعبر عن شيء يحدث الآن.
e.g. Men and women often wear the galabeya.	e.g. She is wearing a blue dress today.

Choose the correct word.

1 Today, I (talk - talks - am talking - talking) to Dr Samir.

2 What are you (wear - wearing - wears - wore) now?

3 We often (help - helped - are helping - helps) at home.

4 (Do - Does - Are - Is) she waiting for the bus?

5 I (eat often - eat usually - usually eats - often eat) ful medames in the morning.

Help your child compare the present simple and present continuous.

ساعد طفلك أن يقارن بين المضارع البسيط والمستمر



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

dress - birthday - wearing - is

Nadia : Hello, Nour. What are you .... (1) ....?
Nour : I'm wearing a blue .... (2) ....
Nadia : Why?
Nour : Because today .... (3) .... a special day.
Nadia : What is it?
Nour : It's my grandma's .... (4) ....



2 Fill in the spaces with:

sleeves - white - cool - leather

1 Linen keeps you ....
2 The galabeya has long ....
3 Sandals are made of ....
4 The ancient Egyptians wore .... clothes.

3 Choose the correct word.

1 Hana (wear - wears - is wearing- wore) a blue dress today.
2 Adam always (help - helps - helping- is helping) his mom at home.
3 He (wait - waited - is waiting- are waiting) for the bus now.
4 Dad (give always - give often - gives always- always gives) me presents.
5 Today, we (is celebrating - celebrate - are celebrating- celebrated) Eid Al- Fitr.
6 He (don't - doesn't - isn't- aren't) eat meat.
7 What (do you - are you - you are- you do) wear to do sports?
8 We sometimes (having - have - are having- has) fish and rice for dinner on Saturdays.
9 Hello! (Do you wait - Are you waiting - Does he wait- You are waiting) for the bus?
10 The sun (rise - rises - rising- is rising) in the morning.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hana is wearing a blue dress. She usually wears a T- shirt and skirt, but today is a special day. She is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family. Adam is helping his mom make ful medames. They often eat meat but today they are making a vegetarian recipe.

A) Answer the following questions.

1 What is Hana wearing today?

....

2 What type of recipe are they making?

....

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 They are celebrating (spring - Eid Al-Fitr - birthday - Sham El-Nissem) with family.

4 Adam's mom is making (fish - fatta - ful medames - pizza) today.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 you - now - What - wearing - are - ?

....

2 prefer - clothes - Some - white - people - .

....

3 has - sleeves - The galabeya - long - .

....

4 favorite - Eid Al-Fitr - my - is - festival - .

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Guiding words:

(special - celebrate - Ramadan - cookies - enjoy)

....

....

....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



WELCOME TO EGYPT



Key vocabulary Listen and repeat.



The Abu Simbel Temples
معبد أبو سمبل

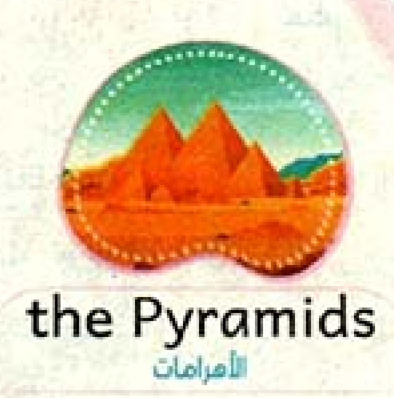


the River Nile
نهر النيل

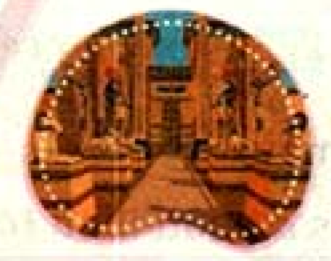


the Red Sea
البحر الأحمر

Egypt
مصر



the Pyramids
الأهرامات



Luxor Temple
معبد الأقصر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Unit (8) Lesson (4)

Extra Vocabulary

sights	معالم سياحية	friendly	ودود
traditions	تقاليد	guests	ضيوف
vegetables stew	شوربة خضار	host	مضيف / يستضيف
stuffed vegetables	خضروات محشية	generous	كريم
desserts	الحلو بعد الأكل	amazing	مدهش
palace	قصر	fantastic	رائع
salted fish (fesikh)	سمك مملح (فسيخ)	brochure	دليل / كتيب (للدعاية)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
invite	يدعو	invited
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
serve	يقدم	served
camp	يعسكر	camped
bake	يخبز	baked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate
meet	يقابل	met
come	يأتي	came
sing	يغني	sang
bring	يحضر	brought

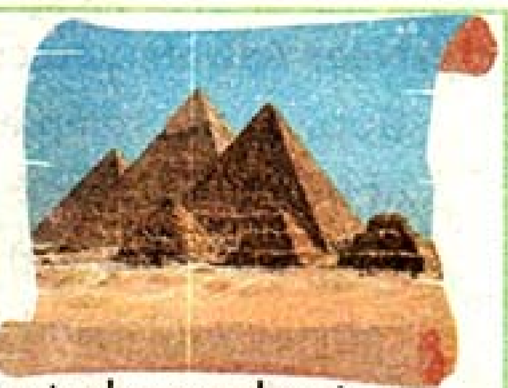
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

famous for	مشهور بـ	learn about	يتعلم عن
It's a good idea to	إنها فكرة جيدة أن	at sunrise	عند شروق الشمس
served with	تُقدم بـ	write about	يكتب عن
give information for	يعطي معلومات لـ	ask for	يطلب
typical meal	وجبة شائعة		

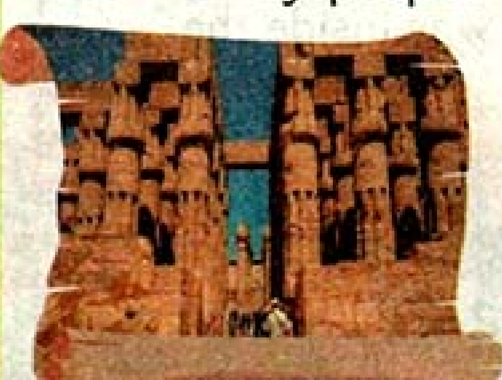
Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Look and read.

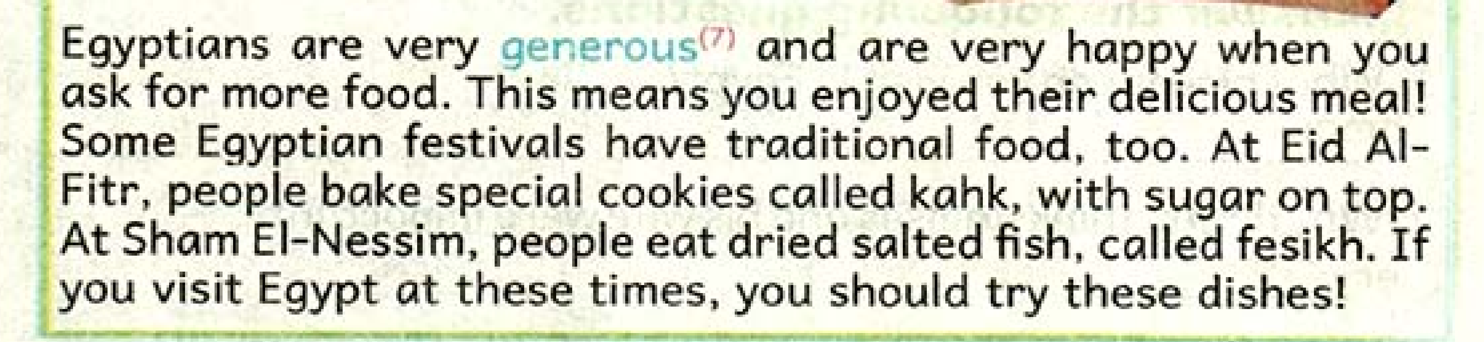


Egypt is a fantastic[1] country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious[2] food, and meet friendly people.



Visitors[3] often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host[4] usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

A traditional[5] Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical[6] meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables and meat or chicken.



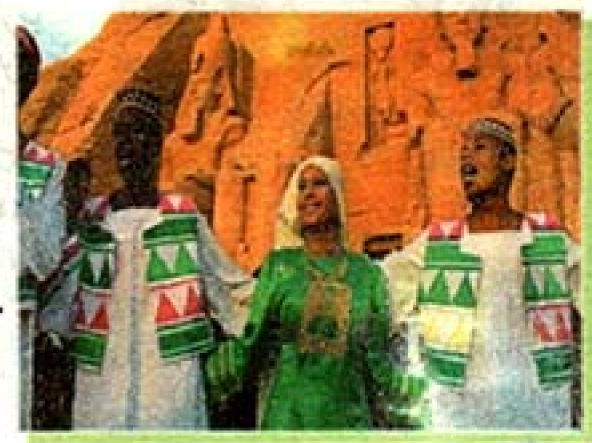
Egyptians are very generous[7] and are very happy when you ask for more food. This means you enjoyed their delicious meal! Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food, too. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake special cookies called kahk, with sugar on top. At Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried salted fish, called fesikh. If you visit Egypt at these times, you should try these dishes!

1. رائع
2. لذيذ
3. زائرون
4. مضيف
5. تقليدي
6. شائع
7. كريم

Help your child learn about Egypt's traditions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن تقاليد مصر.

The Abu Simbel Sun Festival

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside. There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in the dark. People celebrate the Abu Simbel sun festival by getting up early to see the light inside the temple at sunrise. Then people eat, drink and sing to celebrate this special day.



Answer the following questions.

1) What places can you visit in Egypt?

....

2) Why do you think Ramses and his wife were important?

....

3) How often do people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival?

....



Help your child learn about Egypt's traditions.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن تقاليد مصر



1 Listen and complete.

1 .... is a fantastic country to visit.

2 You can see amazing .... in Egypt.

3 Egyptians are very ....

4 Some Egyptian festivals have .... food.

2 Fill in the spaces with:

generous - typical - kahk - traditional

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A ....(1)............ meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very ....(2)............ and are very happy when you ask for more food. Some Egyptian festivals have ....(3)............ food, too. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake special cookies called ....(4)............, with sugar on top. At Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried salted fish, called fesikh.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 is - a fantastic - Egypt - to - country - visit - .

....

2 temple - There - four - are - statues - inside - the - .

....

3 Egyptians - very - are - generous - .

....

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.
There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except Ptah. He is always in the dark. People celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival by getting up early to see the light inside the temple at sunrise. Then people eat, drink and sing to celebrate this special day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 The temples of Abu Simbel are near (Giza - Luxor - Aswan - Cairo).

2 There are (44 - 14 - 4 - 40) statues inside the temples.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 When do people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival?

....

4 Name the four statues inside the temple.

....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Egypt"

Guiding words:
(visit - fantastic - pyramids - traditional meals - kahk - fesikh - generous - enjoy)

....
....
....
....
....



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



- CLIL: FABLES AND FOLKLORE
- Project

Key Vocabulary

servant	خادم	successful	ناجح
shipwreck	حُطام السفينة	sailor	بحّار
special	خاص - مميّز	servant	خادم

Extra Vocabulary

frightened	خائف	giant	عملاق
king	ملك	bright	لامع - مضيء
journey	رحلة	patient	صبور
island	جزيرة	imaginary	خيالي
waves	أمواج	gold	ذهب
snake	ثعبان	terrible	فظيع
storm	عاصفة	exciting	مثير
strong	قوي	conflict	صراع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
look	ينظر	looked
smile	يبتسم	smiled
travel	يسافر	traveled
solve	يحل	solved
return	يعود	returned

Present		Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed
need	يحتاج	needed
ask	يسأل	asked
prepare	يعد - يجهز	prepared
stay	يبقى / يقيم	stayed

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Unit (8) Lessons (5&6)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
tell	يخبر	told
come	يأتي	came
fall	يسقط	fell
bring	يحضر	brought
become	يصبح	became
hear	يسمع	heard
send	يرسل	sent

Present		Past
leave	يغادر	left
begin	يبدأ	began
say	يقول	said
speak	يتحدث	spoke
go	يذهب	went
sink	يغرق	sank

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

travel with	يسافر مع	listen to	يستمع إلى
frightened about	خائف بشأن	went on a journey	ذهب في رحلة
speak to	يتحدث إلى	fell into	سقط في
look for	يبحث عن	get to	يصل إلى
return to	يعود إلى	Be patient	كن صبورًا
leave for	يغادر من أجل	on the island	في الجزيرة
decide to	يقرر أن	worried about	قلق على
fall down	يسقط	go home	يذهب للمنزل
get home	يصل للمنزل	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
try your best	تبذل أقصى جهدك	live with	يعيش مع



The Tale of the Shipwrecked Sailor

"Long ago, the king asked an important[1] man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful [2]. When he returned, he was frightened [3] about what the King would say. His servant [4] spoke to him.
"You must tell the King that you tried your best", he said.
" I don't want to say that I was not successful", said the man.
"Listen to my story," said the servant. "I was a sailor, too. I went on a journey [5] for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a storm came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.

" Another storm began. I saw a giant [6] snake in the waves. His body was gold and his eyes were bright blue. I fell down as he spoke.
"How did you get to this island?" said the snake.
"I couldn't speak. The snake put me in his mouth and took me to the place where he lived. He asked me again how I got to the island, so I told him about the shipwreck [7].
"Don't be frightened," said the snake. "You'll stay on the island for four months, and you'll be safe. Then people will find you and take you home.
Be patient [8], and you'll return to your family."

1. هام / مهم	2. ناجح	3. خائف	4. خادم
5. رحلة	6. عملاق	7. حُطام السفينة	8. صبور

Then the snake told me what happened to him.
"Long ago, I lived on the island with my children and brothers. A star fell, bringing a terrible (9) fire. I was the only one to live. But I stayed strong and patient, and things became better."
"Thank you," I said. "When I get home, I will send you many presents."
The snake laughed. "I don't need your presents. I have everything I need here."
"I was on the island for four months, then a ship came, just as the snake said. The snake gave me special presents to take home."
"Tell people in your city about me," he said.
"I returned to my family, gave the presents to the King, and he was pleased. So listen to my story. I was in a terrible place, but now I'm safe (10)."
The man heard the story, and smiled.

9. فظيع   10. آمن



Did you know?



Fables and folklore are types of stories that are passed down from one group of people to another group of people. They teach us a lesson or "moral", and are often about animals, plants or things that happen in nature. There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

A good story has:

- characters: people, animals or imaginary things. ← شخصيات
- setting: where the story happens. ← مكان
- a plot: exciting events that join together. ← حبكة درامية
- conflict: a problem that the characters have to solve. ← صراع
- Resolution: when the problem is solved and the story ends. ← حل - قرار



Help your child read a traditional fable.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة تقليدية ذات مغزى



1 Read and match.

1	Setting is	a	for four months.
2	Plot is	b	of snakes.
3	I'm frightened	c	where the story happens.
4	I was on the island	d	exciting events that join together.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

2 Choose the correct word.

1. The man traveled (at - by - with - on) many other sailors.
2. I went on a journey (at - by - for - about) the king with the best sailors.
3. I was on the island for four months but unfortunately there was a (snake - shipwreck - rock - stone). I was very scared.
4. I looked (at - in - by - for) the food everywhere but I didn't find it.
5. A (setting - plot - resolution - conflict) is where the story happens.

3 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Long ago, the King asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say. His servant spoke to him.

"You must tell the King that you tried your best," he said.

"I don't want to say that I was not successful," said the man.

"Listen to my story," said the servant. "I was a sailor, too. I went on a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But storm came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island. I was alone and frightened. Then,looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.

Unit (8) Lessons (5&6)

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The (prince - boy - king - queen) asked the man to leave Egypt for a special job.
2. The man was (happy - interested - alone - lonely) and he was frightened.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happened to the ship and the man?

....

4. With whom did the man go?

....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a giant - saw - I - waves - in - snake - the - .

....

2. send - will - I - presents - you - many - .

....

3. long - was - How - the servant - island - on - the - ?

....

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

mohamed was afraid on the island

....

6 Write a short story of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Your trip to Aswan"

Guiding words:

(Last week - Aswan - sun festival - family - hotel - enjoyed)

....

....

....

....

....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Review on Unit (8)

Festivals أعياد

Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم	celebration	احتفال	go down	تغرب
Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي	sunset	غروب الشمس	prayer	صلاة - دعاء
fairgrounds	ساحات الألعاب	sacrifice (d)	يضحي	feast	وليمة
dark colored clothes	ملابس داكنة اللون	celebrate (d)	يحتفل	creation	خلق
Hajj pilgrimage	الحج	Eid Al-Adha	عيد الأضحى	come up	تشرق
grateful for	شاكر على - ممتن لـ	sunrise	شروق الشمس	lantern	فانوس

Recipes وصفات

recipes	وصفات (للطعام)	ful medames	فول مدمس	beans	فول
fatta	فتة	hawawshi	حواوشي	herbs	أعشاب
sayadeya	سمك صيادية	spices	بهارات/ توابل	bread	خبز
garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت زيتون	vinegar	خل

Clothes ملابس

buttons	أزرار	kaftan	قفطان	linen	كتان (قماش)
jewelry	حلي	short	قصير	sleeves	أكمام
hizam	حزام	loose	فضفاض/ واسع	galabeya	جلابية
wear (wore)	يرتدي	long	طويل	sandals	صندل

Fables and folklore القصص والفنون الشعبية

shipwreck	حطام السفينة	servant	خادم	patient	صبور
successful	ناجح	sailor	بحار	special	مميز



Unit (8) Review

Egypt مصر

The Pyramids	الأهرامات	host	مضيف
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	sights	معالم سياحية
the Abu Simbel Temples	معبد أبو سمبل	statues	تماثيل
the River Nile	نهر النيل	traditions	تقاليد
Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	guest	ضيف
vegetable stew	شوربة خضار مع اللحم	generous	كريم



Language



Comparison between

Present Simple	Present Continuous
It expresses something that is true, or that usually happens. يعبر عن شيء حقيقي أو شيء يحدث عادة.	It expresses something that is happening now. يعبر عن شيء يحدث الآن.
e.g. White is a good color to wear in hot weather. *e.g.* Men and women often wear the galabeya.	*e.g.* She is wearing a blue dress today. *e.g.* They are playing chess now.





"Eid Al-Adha"

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days. It's during the month of Zu Elhijja. Many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat. They have a dish called fatta. We wear our best clothes and visit our family and friends.

"Ful Medames"

Ful medames is my favorite meal. We use beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion and herbs. It never has any meat in it . We always eat it with bread. I eat it every day .

"Sham El-Nessim"

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. It is in spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation and new life. It is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather is usually sunny and warm. We eat different traditional food like boiled eggs and fesikh.

"Egypt"

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.



Activities on Unit (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. My favorite festival is (Sham El-Nessim - scuba diving - Christmas - Eid Al-Adha).
2. In Sham El-Nessim we paint and decorate (meat - fruits - vegetables - eggs).
3. We eat (kunafa - salted fish - kahk - koshari) at Eid Al-Fitr.
4. At Eid Al-Adha we eat (fish - lentil - koshari - fatta).

2 Listen and complete.

1. The .... asked an important man to leave Egypt.
2. The man traveled with many ....
3. The man wasn't ....
4. The man was .... when he returned.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Pyramids - the Red Sea - the Nile - Egypt

I think ....(1)............ is a great place to visit. You can visit the ....(2)............ of Giza, the library in Alexandria, or the beautiful temple of Hatshepsut in the Valley of the Kings. There are so many things to see. It's a fantastic place to have a holiday. You can take a boat trip down ....(3)............ or go camping in the desert or you can go diving in ....(4)............ .

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we have a feast together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Eid Al-Adha lasts for (four - five - fourteen - forty) days.

2 Muslims go to the (zoo - park - mosque - school) for prayers.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 When is Eid Al-Adha?

....

4 What do Muslims sacrifice at Eid Al-Adha?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 It's hot on the roof today. (   )

....

2 An eagle landed in a nest on top of the neighbour's building. (   )

....

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 The (seagull - eagle - chick - chicken) is so beautiful.

4 Amir and Grandma hang up the (dishes - clothes - bottles - bags).

6 Choose the correct word.

1 Dina (is reading - read - reading - are reading) a book of Egyptian fables in her bedroom now.

2 Fares (living - lives - live - are living) in an apartment near the coast.

3 Look at these! I (paints - paint - painted - am painting) some eggs for Sham El-Nessim.

4 The children usually (play - plays - playing - are playing)games in the park on the weekend.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 never - any - Ful medames - has- in - meat - it - .

....

2 are - What - you - today - wearing - ?

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Your favorite dish"

Guiding words:

(Ful medames - bread - lemon juice - onion - meat - delicious)

....

....

....

....

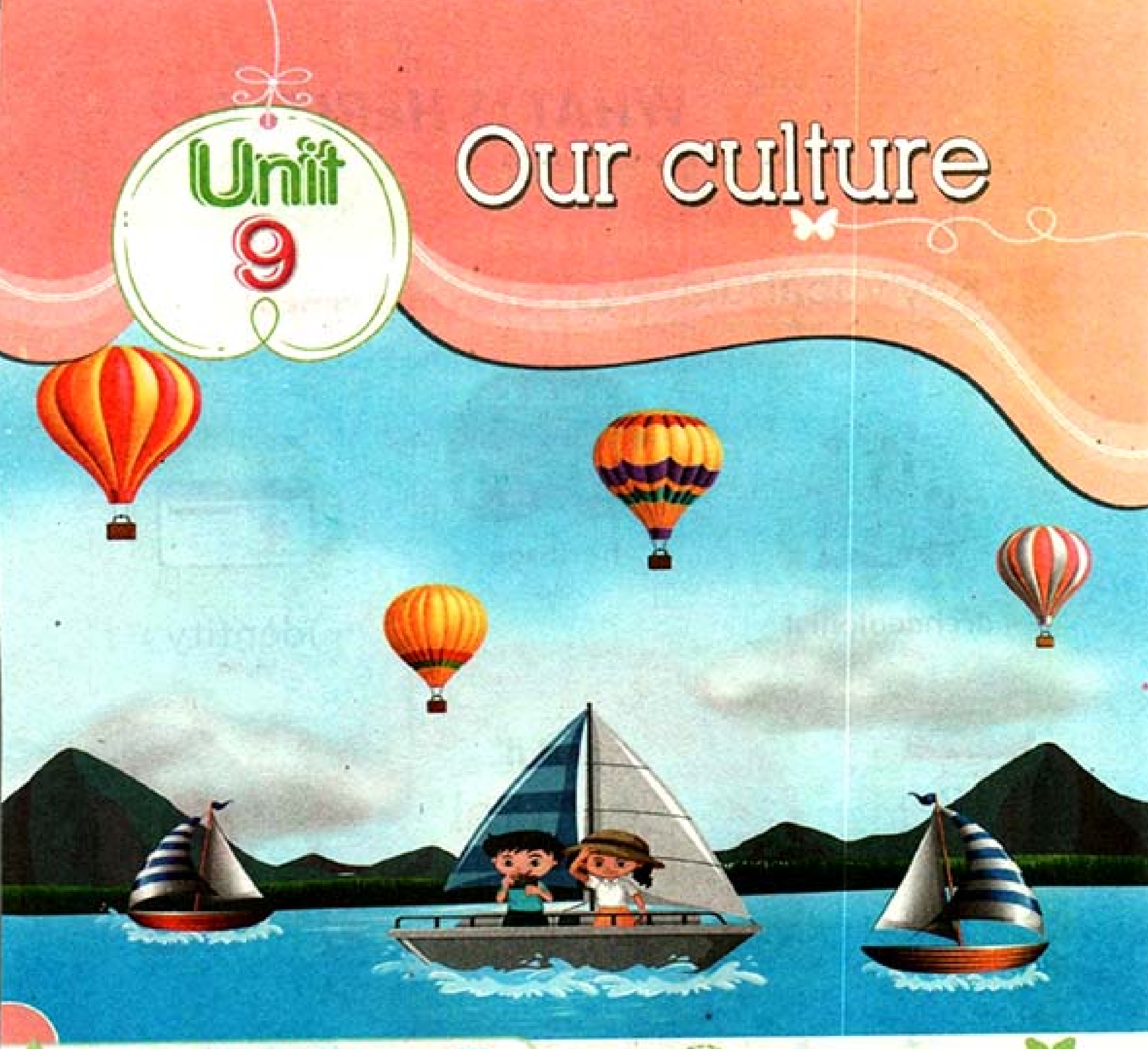
....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



In this unit students will ...

- read about their cultural heritage.
- read a story about cultural artifacts.
- revise past simple verbs.
- form and use past continuous verbs.
- listen to information about tourism and archaeology.
- learn about and draw bar charts.
- write notes for an object in a museum.
- write a report about an archaeological site.

WHAT IS HERITAGE?

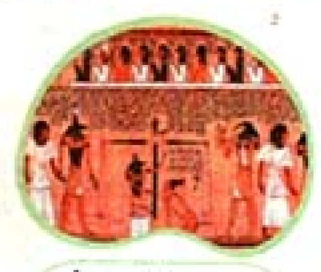
Lesson (1)

Key vocabulary

Listen and repeat.



archaeologist
عالم آثار



heritage
تراث



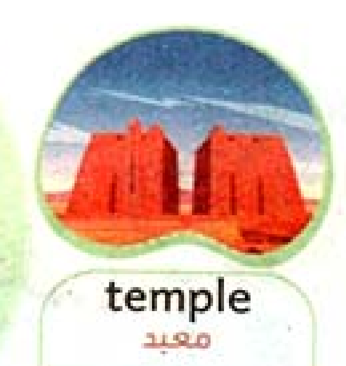
identity
هوية



calendar
تقويم



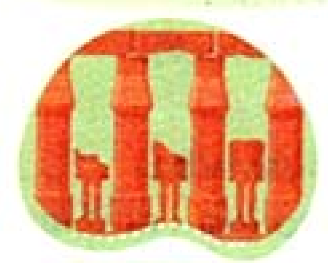
Our cultural heritage
تراثنا الثقافي



temple
معبد



agriculture
الزراعة



site
موقع أثري



civilization
حضارة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Seasons of agriculture

مواسم الزراعة في مصر "قديمًا"



The flooding season
موسم الفيضان

June - July - August - September



The growing season
موسم الزراعة

October - November
December - January - February



The harvesting season
موسم الحصاد

March - April - May

Extra Vocabulary

country	بلد / دولة	food	طعام	unique	فريد من نوعه
object	شيء	important	هام	fertile	خصب
interesting	شيق	dancing	رقص	crops	محاصيل
historian	مؤرخ	soil	تربة	museum	متحف
system	نظام	growth	نمو/نماء	farming	الزراعة
field	حقل	amazing	مذهل	monuments	آثار

Help your child identify the farming seasons.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على مواسم الزراعة

Unit (9) Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
include	يتضمن	included
explore	يستكشف	explored
store	يخزن	stored
flood	يفيض	flooded
develop	يطور	developed
farm	يزرع	farmed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
come	يأتي	came
build	يبني	built
know	يعرف	knew
lead to	يؤدي إلى	led to
grow	يزرع	grew
cut	يقطع	cut

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

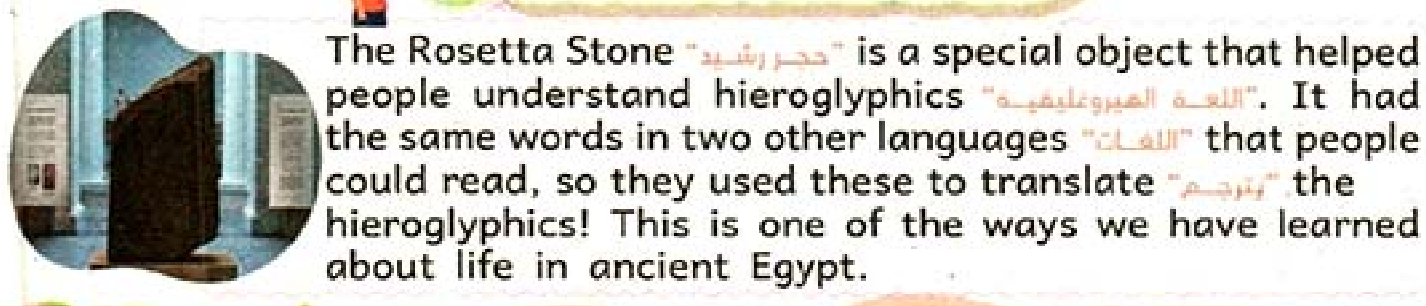
their own heritage	تراثهم الخاص	come from	يأتي من	lead to	يؤدي إلى
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	interested in	مهتم بـ	used to	اعتاد أن
learn about	يتعلم عن	connect to	يرتبط بـ	find out	يكتشف
full of	مملوء بـ	proud of	فخور بـ	good for	صالح لـ

Places أماكن

Abu Simbel Temple	معبد أبو سمبل	Luxor	الأقصر
The Nile	نهر النيل	Giza	الجيزة

Definitions

site	an interesting place, for example where an old town or building used to be موقع أثري
civilization	a large group of people who have their unique art, music, science, etc. حضارة



Did you know?

The Rosetta Stone "حجر رشيد" is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics "اللغة الهيروغليفية". It had the same words in two other languages "اللغات" that people could read, so they used these to translate "يترجم" the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient Egypt.

• Help your child learn the new vocabulary.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم المفردات الجديدة

My heritage

A country's heritage[1] is an important part of its identity[2]. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects[3] from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples[4] and monuments[5], and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture[6] and some of the first calendars[7]. Archaeologists[8] have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization[9] of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites[10] at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of my heritage.

1. تراث	2. هوية	3. أشياء	4. معابد	5. آثار
6. الزراعة	7. تقويم	8. علماء الآثار	9. حضارة	10. مواقع أثرية



Answer the following.

1) Is agriclture a part of Egypt's heritage? ....

2) How have archaeologists learned about the civilization of ancient Egypt? ....

How did farmers use the Nile?

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood[1] every year, making the soil[2] more fertile[3]. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth[4] in civilization. There were three seasons of farming[5] in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

These were:

- The flooding season[6]: from June to September. The fields were full of water for four months.
- The growing season[7]: from October to February. The water went away and the soil was rich and fertile. Farmers planted lots of different crops[8].
- The harvesting season[9]: from March to May. Farmers cut the crops and stored them safely[10] before the Nile flooded again.

1. يفيض	2. تربة	3. خصب	4. نمو	5. الزراعة
6. موسم الفيضان	7. موسم الزراعة	8. محاصيل	9. موسم الحصاد	10. بأمان

Answer the following.

1) What were the months of the flooding season? ....

2) When did farmers cut and store the crops safely? ....

3) What were the seasons connected to? ....

Help your child read about our cultural heritage. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تراثنا الثقافي



1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

history - past - identity - heritage

Omar : What do you know about a country's .... (1) ....?

Ali : It's an important part of its .... (2)....................

Omar : Where does a heritage come from?

Ali : It comes from a country's .... (3) .... and traditions.

Omar : What does a heritage include?

Ali : It includes art , buildings and objects from the ......(4)......

2 Choose the correct word.

1. A country's heritage is an important part of its (subject - sport - identity - land).
2. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing (temples - towers - factories - hotels).
3. People in(far - proud - ancient - high) Egypt developed lots of new things.
4. (Farmers - Teachers - Archaeologists - Vets) want to find out how people used to live.
5. A(season - site - calendar - city) is an interesting place, for example where an old town or building used to be.
6. We use a (calendar - heritage - temple - book) to see what day, month or time of year it is.
7. A(heritage - civilization - site - season)is a large group of people who have their unique art,music, science,etc.
8. Historians are interested in (monuments - crops - seasons - goats) of ancient Egypt.

9 The fields were full of water in the (flooding - growing - harvesting - watering) season.
10 Farmers cut the crops and stored them in the (growing - harvesting - flooding - cutting) season.
11 The Nile used to flood every year making the soil (bad - fertile - dry - deep).
12 There were three (months - days - seasons - weeks) of farming in ancient Egypt.
13 Farmers planted a lot of (pumps - crops - towers - temples).
14 Farming in ancient Egypt led to a (length - width - growth - depth)in civilization.

3 Read and match.

1	All countries have	a	in Egypt's heritage.
2	Ancient Egyptians built	b	you like to visit?
3	I'm very interested	c	their own heritage.
4	Which sites would	d	many amazing temples.

1- ( )   2- ( )   3- ( )   4- ( )

4 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

calendar - crops - flood - Agriculture

1 .... is an important part of Egypt's heritage.
2 The.................... can tell you what day it is.
3 The Nile used to .... every year.
4 Farmers cut the .... and stored them safely.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt,which were all connected to the Nile. These were:

•The flooding season when the fields were full of water.

•The growing season when farmers planted lots of different crops.

•The harvesting season when farmers cut and stored the crops safely.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 The Nile used to (flood - dry - drink - break) every year.

2 There were (two - three - four - five) seasons of farming in ancient Egypt.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What did the Nile make for the soil?

....

4 What were the seasons of farming in ancient Egypt?

....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 have - heritage - own - All - their - countries - .

....

2 museum - my - I - visited - parents - with - the - .

....

3 do - in - grow - What - Egypt - farmers - ?

....

4 in - Are - heritage - you - Egypt's - interested - ?

....

Lesson (2) AN ANCIENT GAME

Main Vocabulary

counters	بيادق (مثل قطع الشطرنج)	artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية
senet game	لعبة السينيت	ordinary	عادي

Extra Vocabulary

goats	ماعز	happily	بسعادة
tired	متعب / مرهق	hill	تل
cookies	بسكويت / كعك	desert	صحراء
squares	مربعات	rich	غني
winner	فائز	information	معلومات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
wave	يلوّح	waved
move	ينتقل / يتحرك	moved
wonder	يتساءل	wondered
walk	يمشي	walked
carry	يحمل	carried
invent	يخترع	invented
paint	يلون	painted
want	يريد	wanted
visit	يزور	visited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
see	يرى	saw
find	يجد	found
make	يصنع	made
sit	يجلس	sat
take	يأخذ	took
say	يقول	said
have	يملك	had
fly	يطير	flew

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a hot day	يوم حار	on the top	على القمة
look happy	يبدو سعيدًا	on the side	على الجانب
look fun	يبدو ممتعًا	have to	يجب أن
Let's play.	هيا بنا نلعب.	walk away	يمشي بعيدًا
a long wooden box	صندوق خشبي طويل	in front of	أمام
look up	ينظر لأعلى	wave at	يلوح لـ
come home	يعود للمنزل	look after	يعتني بـ
take a photo	يلتقط صورة	like me	مثلي / يشبهني
Quick!	أسرع!	read about	يقرأ عن

Ordering sentences in a story ترتيب الجمل في قصة

1- First	أولًا	3- Then	بعد ذلك
2- Next	التالي	4- Finally	في النهاية



First, Sara read some information in a museum brochure (كتيب - منشور). Next, she wanted to find out more. Then, she turned on her phone. Finally, she found some interesting information about Queen Nefertari.

Did you know?



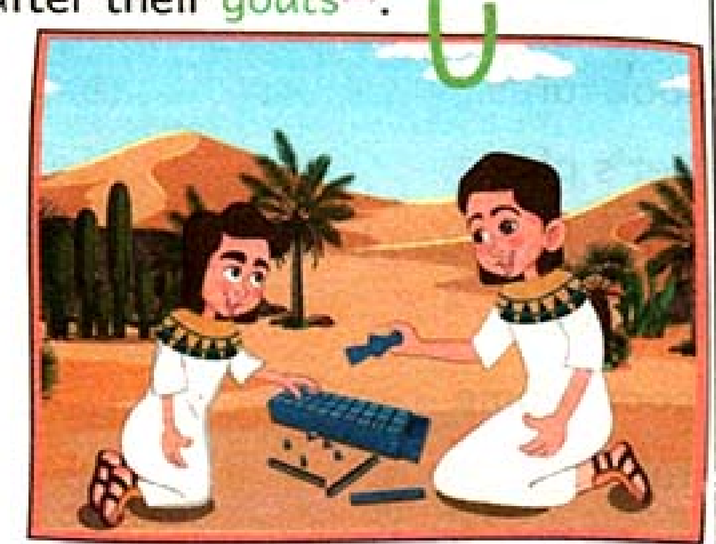
Senet لعب السنينت is the world's oldest board game لعبة لوحية. Archaeologists found a senet game in Tutankhamun's tomb مقبرة توت عنخ آمون!

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Unit (9) Lesson (2)

Read the story. What did Sara see in the museum?

Akil often helped his dad look after their goats[1].



One day, he was sitting under a tree. It was a hot day, and he was tired. Then he saw his friend Ottah, and waved at him. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.

"Look, Akil! my dad made me a game!" He showed Akil a long wooden box with squares[2] on the top. The box had beautiful pictures on the side. Next, he took out some counters from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short. "That looks fun! What do we have to do?" said Akil "We have to move the counters and see how far we can move. The winner[3] is the first to get all their counters off the board. Let's play!" Ottah and Akil played happily under the tree. Then Akil looked up. "Oh no!" he said. "Ottah, where are my goats?" Ottah and Akil looked around. The goats were walking away over a small hill[4]. "Look, there they are!" Akil said. "Quick! We have to get them!"

1. ماعز 2. مربعات 3. فائز 4. تل

Answer the following.

1) What was the weather like that day?

....

2) Where were the goats walking?

....

Help your child read about an ancient Egyptian game.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن لعبة مصرية قديمة

Sara was in the museum(1) with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifacts(2). There were lots of very old things and Sara was reading the information(3) about each object. Finally, Sara stopped in front of a long wooden box.



"Mom, Dad, look at this!" she said. "What is it?" asked Dad. It looks like an old senet game(4), said Mom.
"Look. The information says that it's 3,500 years old," said Sara. That's amazing! I wonder who used to play with it. Archaeologists found it in the desert near Luxor.
"It says here that lots of people used to play senet: rich(5) people and ordinary(6) people."said Mom. "Maybe children like me played with this game!" said Sara.

1. متحف 2. مصنوعات يدوية 3. معلومات 4. لعبة السينيت 5. غني 6. عادي

A) Answer the following.

1) What were the family looking at? ....

2) Who used to play senet game? ....

B) Put (True) or (False).

3) Sara was in the club. (   )

4) Sara stopped in front of a golden box. (   )

5) The artifacts of ancient Egypt are very old. (   )



Language



The Past Simple
الماضي البسيط

Form The second form of the verb

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم وغير المنتظم يحفظ)

- I visited Luxor last week.
- They saw the lion at the zoo.

Usage

يعبر عن حدث انتهى في الماضي

I went to school late yesterday.

Negative

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

- We didn't watch TV yesterday.

Question

Yes/No question

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

- Did you study English yesterday?
- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.

Wh-question

Q.W + did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

- Where did you go yesterday?
- I went to the club.

Keywords

yesterday أمس	last الماضي	... ago منذ
in (2010) في عام (٢٠١٠)	in the past في الماضي	

Help your child learn the past simple tense. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Remember

Verb to be in the past

Form

I - He - She - It	A singular noun →	was....
They - You - We	A plural noun →	were....

- Akil was happy.
- Akil and Ottah were happy.

Negative

Subject الفاعل + wasn't / weren't.....

- She wasn't at school yesterday.
- They weren't at the museum last week.

Question

Yes/No question

Was / Were + subject الفاعل + ...?

- Was Omar happy yesterday?
  - Yes, he was. — No, he wasn't.
- Were you sad yesterday?
  - Yes, I was. — No, I wasn't.



Q.W + was/were + subject الفاعل + ...?

- How was your trip? — It was nice.
- Where were you born? — I was born in Giza.

Help your child learn the past tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم زمن الماضي البسيط

The Past Continuous

الماضي المستمر

Form

I - He - She - It	A singular noun	was	+ v + ing
They - You - We	A plural noun	were	

- He was sitting under a tree.
- They were playing the senet game.

Negative

Subject الفاعل + wasn't / weren't + v + ing

- Ali wasn't sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday.
- We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

Question

Yes, No question

Was / Were + subject الفاعل + v + ing?

Were they playing tennis?

- Yes, they were.
- No, they weren't.

Wh-question

Q.W + was/were + subject الفاعل + v + ing?

What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

- I was watching TV.

Keywords

yesterday morning	yesterday evening
at 3 a.m yesterday	

Usage

يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر ليعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي:

- They were having dinner yesterday evening.

Past continuous + when + Past simple
ماضي مستمر عندما ماضي بسيط

لاحظ الآتي:
حدث كان مستمرًا ولكن قطعه حدث آخر فجأة

Mona was digging when she found an old box.

When عندما + past simple ماضي بسيط + past continuous ماضي مستمر

When Mona found an old box, she was digging.



Rewrite Corner

1 She is happy today. (yesterday)
⇨ She was happy yesterday.
2 He watched TV yesterday. (yesterday evening)
⇨ He was watching TV yesterday evening.
3 Ahmed was sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday. (not)
⇨ Ahmed wasn't sleeping at 5 p.m yesterday.
4 I was born in Cairo. (Where)
⇨ Where were you born?
5 I was having lunch at noon. (What)
⇨ What were you doing at noon?

1 Choose the correct word.

1 She (is - has - was - am) studying English yesterday evening.
2 They (were - are - is - was) making cakes at 10 yesterday.
3 What (is - was - has - are) the weather like yesterday?
4 We were digging (as - so - when - to) we found an old box.

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 She was sleeping at 3 a.m yesterday. (Was)
....
2 Yes, I was happy yesterday. (Were)
....
3 He slept yesterday. (at 7 p.m yesterday)
....



1 Listen and choose the correct word.

1. Khufu is famous for building the (Small - Great - Short - Step) Pyramid.
2. The statue shows the pharaoh sitting on a (table - box - chair - throne).
3. Khufu built the solar (boat - ship - raft - canoe).
4. Khufu's pyramid is found in (Sohag - Giza - Cairo - Luxor).

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

old - museum - did - senet

Salem : Hi, Mazin. Where ....(1).......... you go yesterday?
Mazin : I went to the ....(2)...............................
Salem : What did you see there?
Mazin : I saw an old ....(3).......... game.
Salem : How ....(4).......... was it?
Mazin : It was 3,500 years old.

3 Choose the correct word.

1. The children (were playing - was playing - plays - playing) a game.
2. The archaeologist (were digging - have dug - was digging - dug) when she found an old box.
3. I (was studying - were studying - studies - will study) in the library when I saw Fares.
4. Dina and Yasmin (was visiting - were visiting - visits - visiting) a museum.

 Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Adam (was making - were making - make - will make) cookies when his dad came home.

6 We (was taking - takes - were taking - will take) a photo of the bird when it flew away.

7 Sara (is - was - were - has) in the museum yesterday.

8 Akil and Ottah (were - is - was - have) happy.

9 Farmers keep (elephants - goats - lions - tigers) in their fields.

10 The (loser - winner - lazy - liner) is the first to get all their counters off the board.

11 Rich and (ordinary - wealthy - lazy - bad) people used to play senet.

12 Sara was looking at the Egyptian (facts - artifacts - mobiles - pools) in the museum.

13 Senet is the world's oldest (field - board - pool - sports) game.

4 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 He walked in the street. He fell down. (when)

....

2 They are happy now. (yesterday)

....

3 Ali was sad yesterday. (happy)

....

4 I was doing my homework yesterday evening. (What)

....

5 He was tired last week. (They)

....

5 Read and match.

1 First I did homework,
2 I was walking home
3 Senet is the world's
4 Sara stopped in

a oldest board game.
b front of a wooden box.
c then I slept.
d when I saw Ali.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 reading - information - Sara - some - was - .

....

2 walking - The goats - away - the - hill - were - over - .

....

3 sitting - a tree - He - under - was - .

....

7 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tree - tired - waved - goats

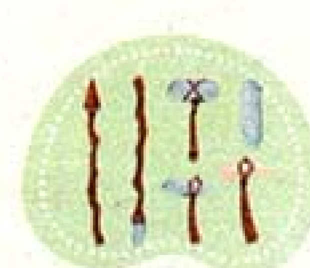
Akil often helped his dad look after their ....(1).......... .One day, he was sitting under a ....(2).......... . It was a hot day, and he was ....(3)..........Then he saw his friend Ottah, and ....(4).......... at him. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.

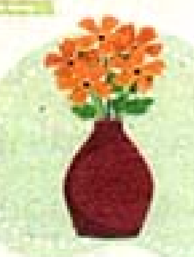
Lesson (3)

TOURISM AND ARCHAEOLOGY

Key vocabulary

Listen and repeat.


tools
أدوات


vase
زهرية


mask
قناع


cruise
جولة نيلية




carve
ينحت

structures
مباني


perfume
عطر


pottery
أواني فخارية


engravings
نقوش

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Unit (9) Lesson (3)

Extra Vocabulary

tourism	السياحة	builders	عمال بناء
archaeology	علم الآثار	clay	صلصال
pyramids	الأهرامات	simpler	أبسط
temples	معابد	port	ميناء
incredible	لا يصدق / هائل	paintings	لوحات
famous	مشهور	huge	ضخم
special	خاص / مميز	popular	شعبي / محبوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited
want	يريد	wanted
protect	يحمي	protected
decorate	يزين	decorated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought
build	يبني	built
tell	يخبر	told
hold	يمسك/ يحفظ	held

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

The Step Pyramid of Djoser	هرم زوسر المدرج		
The Temple of Karnak	معبد الكرنك		
The Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك		
The Roman Theater	المسرح الروماني	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
The Library of Alexandria	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	because of	بسبب
The capital city	العاصمة	a piece of stone	قطعة حجر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Read, then answer.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites[1]. Tourists want to see the large monuments[2], pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures[3] over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations[4] in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume. So, what are some of the most popular sites that tourists want to visit?

Giza

Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

Saqqara

This is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser[5] in about 2630 BCE[6]. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.



Alexandria

There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theater, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

Luxor

Many tourists[7] visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried[8] their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings[9] and engravings in the temples.

There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit?

1- مواقع أثرية　2- آثار　3- مباني　4- حضارات　5- الملك زوسر

6- قبل الميلاد　7- سائحين　8- دفنوا　9- لوحات/ رسومات

Answer the following questions.

1) What were vases in ancient Egypt made of?

....

2) Which city used to be the capital of Egypt?

....

Help your child read about tourism and archaeology.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن السياحة و الآثار



1 Listen and choose the correct word.

1. Saqqara site has many (tombs - masks - vases - balls).
2. (Doctors - Builders - Vets - Teachers) built Saqqara for King Djoser.
3. Saqqara Pyramid was built in about (2630 - 2640 - 2650 - 2660) BCE.
4. Saqqara Pyramid is one of the oldest (glass - wooden - stone - sand) monuments.

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:



carved - Pyramids - tourists - Giza

Mona : Where do you live?

Noha : I live in .... (1) ....

Mona : Why do ...... (2) .... visit Giza?

Noha : To see the .... (3) ....

Mona : How did the ancient Egyptians build the Sphinx?

Noha : They .... (4) .... it from one huge piece of stone.

3 Choose the correct word.

1. Tourists visit Egypt to see the large (pictures - clubs - monuments - ships).
2. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as (balls - pottery - tablets - looms).
3. The ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from (wood - glass - clay - stones).
4. The ancient Egyptians used pottery vases to (hold - make - protect - cut) water and food.
5. The ancient Egyptians used (salt - oil - perfume - water) to smell good.
6. The ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to (visit - hold - protect - break) the Pyramids.

7 They (built - carved - visited - cut) the Sphinx from one huge piece of stone.

8 *Saqqara* is one of the biggest (sites - ports - temples - cruises) in Egypt.

9 Alexandria was the (capital - club - port - library) city of Egypt.

10 Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River (taxi - truck - cruise - car).

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery,vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Ancient Egyptians made pottery (vases - cups - pens - books) from clay.

2 Ancient Egyptians made small pots for oil or (milk - water - juice - perfume).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Why do a lot of people visit Egypt every year? ....

4 What have archaeologists found? ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 tourists - Luxor - How - many - travel - to - ?

....

2 Luxor - of - Karnak - in - The - is - Temple - .

....

3 Egyptians - lots - pottery - Ancient - of - used - .

....

MATH

Lesson (4)

Key Vocabulary

bar chart	تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة	exhibition	معرض
horizontal	أفقي	x-axis	محور السين
vertical	رأسي	y-axis	محور الصاد

Extra Vocabulary

project	مشروع	paper	ورق
room	حجرة	visitors	زوار
different	مختلف	ruler	مسطرة
popular	مشهور - محبوب - شعبي	number	رقم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
design	يصمم	designed
plan	يخطط	planned
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
show	يعرض	showed
put	يضع	put
let	يدع/ يسمح	let

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

International Museum Day	اليوم العالمي للمتاحف
months of the year	شهور السنة
days of the week	أيام الأسبوع
Let me think.	دعني أفكر.
go up	يصعد لأعلى - يرتفع



Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Remember تذكر

The line that goes across is (horizontal)	أفقي
It is called the (x-axis)	محور السين
The line that goes up is (vertical)	رأسي
It is called the (y-axis)	محور الصاد

Listen and read.

Adam was doing his school project. "This is a really interesting[1] project, Mom!" he said.

"What do you have to do?" she asked.

"We're learning about International Museum Day. We have to design a new museum[2] and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions[3] that show different things, and we have to show which is the most popular[4] exhibition."

"OK, so what are you going to put in your museum?" Mom asked.

"Let me think," said Adam. "Maybe[5] a room about art, and one about games. Can you help me to plan it?"

"OK! Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler!" said Mom.

1. شيق
2. متحف
3. معارض مختلفة
4. شعبي - مشهور
5. ربما - قد

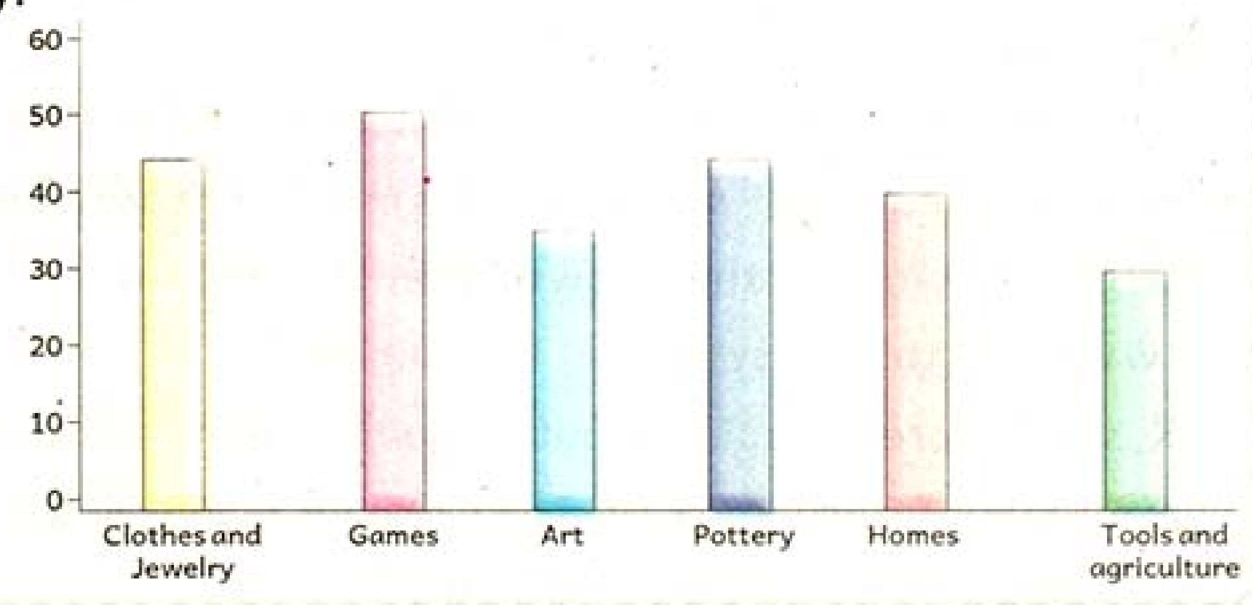
Choose the correct answer.

1) Adam was doing his school (project - homework - sport).
2) Adam will put (books - games - pools) in the exhibition.

Unit (9) Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

Adam wanted to show the most popular[1] exhibition in his museum. He used a bar chart to show how many people visited the exhibitions. The line across the bottom[2] is called the x-axis. It is horizontal. The x-axis here shows the different[3] exhibitions. The y-axis is the line[4] that goes up. It is vertical. The y-axis here shows the number of visitors on one day in July.



1. محبوب 2. قاع / أسفل 3. مختلف 4. خط

Answer the following questions.

1) What do we call the line that goes across the bottom?

....

2) What do we call the line that goes up?

....



Help your child learn about and draw bar charts.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويرسم التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

across - line - vertical - chart

Ali : Do you know how to use a bar .... (1) .... ?

Tamer : Yes, I do.

Ali : What is the line that goes .... (2) .... the bottom?

Tamer : It's horizontal.

Ali : What is the .... (3) .... that goes up?

Tamer : It's the y-axis. It's .... (4) ....

2 Read and match.

1 We are learning — a visitors in the museum.
2 There are twelve — b months in the year.
3 Which exhibition — c about International Museum Day.
4 There are a lot of — d had the most visitors?

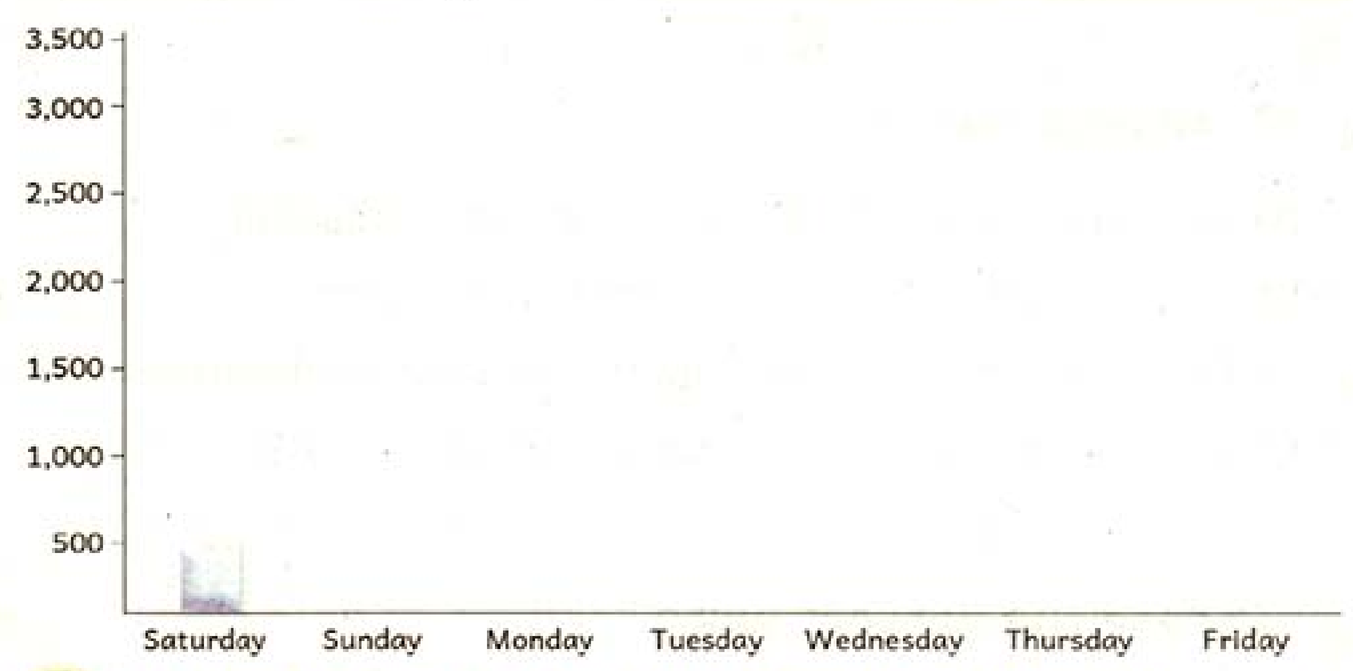
1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )

3 Choose the correct word.

1 Adam always uses a (pear - bear - bar - wall) chart in his study.
2 The line that goes across is (horizontal - column - vertical - columnar).
3 The horizontal line is called the (y-axis - z-axis - u-axis - x-axis).
4 The line that goes up is (columnar - horizontal - column - vertical).
5 The vertical line is called the (x-axis - h-axis - y-axis - z-axis).

4 Here are the numbers of visitors to the zoo in a week. **Complete the bar chart in the space below.**

Day	visitors
Saturday	500
Sunday	3,000
Monday	3,500
Tuesday	3,000
Wednesday	2,000
Thursday	500
Friday	1,500



5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 people - exhibition - How - the - many - visited - ?

....

2 get - paper - and - pens - Let's - your - .

....

3 you - to - do - What - have - do - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

WRITING / PROJECT

Lessons (5 &6)

Main Vocabulary — Listen and repeat.

Statue of Amenhotep III	تمثال امنحوتب الثالث
Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat	مركب الشمس للفرعون خوفو
Tutankhamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
The Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير

Extra Vocabulary

person	شخص	statue	تمثال	death	الموت
desert	صحراء	interest	اهتمام	place	مكان
limestone	الحجر الجيري	poor	فقير	daughter	ابنة
wife	زوجة	map	خريطة	sand	رمل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
believe	يؤمن	believed
travel	يسافر	traveled
belong	ينتمي	belonged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took
know	يعرف	knew
write	يكتب	wrote

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

gold mask	قناع ذهبي	an amazing site	موقع مذهل
Statue of Bastet	تمثال باستيت	famous for	مشهور بـ
look for	يبحث عن	wooden boat	مركب خشبي

Help your child learn the vocabulary.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم المفردات الجديدة

Unit (9) Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and read.

1) Statue of Amenhotep III

What is it? the statue of Amenhotep III, his wife[1] Tiye and their three daughters[2]

How old is it? about 3,400 years old

What is it made of? limestone[3]

How big is it? 7 meters tall, 4,4 meters wide

Where is it from? Luxor

2) Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat



What is it? a wooden boat found in Pharoah[4] Khufu's tomb

How old is it? about 4,600 years old

What is it made of? wood

How big is it? 42 meters long

Where is it from? Giza

3) Tutankhamun's mask



What is it? a gold mask

How old is it? over 3,000 years old

What is it made of? gold[5]

How big is it? 54 cm tall

Where is it from? The Valley of the Kings



1. زوجة
2. بنات
3. حجر جيري
4. الفرعون
5. ذهب



Help your child write notes for an object in a museum.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب ملاحظات عن شيء في متحف

Answer the following questions.

1) What is Amenhotep's III wife called?

....

2) How many daughters did Amenhotep have?

....

Did you know?

The Grand Egyptian Museum "المتحف المصري الكبير" has more than 5,000 items "أشياء" that belonged to "كانت تخص" the Pharoah Tutankhamun.



1) When you give information, you often have to answer questions such as Who, What, When, Where, and How.

١) عند تقديم معلومات، يجب أن نجيب على أسئلة تبدأ بأدوات الاستفهام التالية (مَن - ماذا - متى - أين - كيف).

2) You give facts, not opinions. Facts can include names, dates, and places. ٢) تقوم بتقديم حقائق وليس آراء، والحقائق يمكن أن تتضمن (أسماء - تواريخ - أماكن)

3) Then you can add more interest by giving extra information. This might not answer a Wh- question, but it is something that people might want to know.

٣) ثم تضيف عنصر التشويق بمزيد من المعلومات. وليس من الضروري أن يكون إجابة سؤال يبدأ بأداة استفهام ولكن ربما يكون شيء يريد أن يعرفه الناس.

Help your child learn how to give written information.



The Statue of Bastet

The statue of Bastet is 30 centimetres tall. It's 2,500 years old. It's made of limestone. It was found in Alexandria. It looks like a nice cat. It's an amazing statue.

Write a short paragraph about:

"Tutankhamun's mask"

....

....

....

....

....

....

A newspaper report about an archaeological site

عند كتابة تقرير صحفي عن موقع أثري يجب أن يتضمن وقت اكتشافه، ومكانه وماذا وجد علماء الآثار ومدى أهميته

Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amazing site in 2010. This is a very old city and nobody knew about it. They found a lot of old artifacts. It's a very important site because tourists can visit it.



Help your child to write a report about an archaeological site.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب تقريرا عن موقع أثري



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

old - made - limestone - information

Aya : Do you know any .... (1) .... about the Statue of Amenhotep III?

Sara : Yes, I do.

Aya : How .... (2) .... is it?

Sara : It's about 3,400 years old.

Aya : What's it .... (3) .... of?

Sara : It's made of .... (4) ....

2 Read and match.

1	Tutankhamun's mask	a	found in a port city.
2	Where is it from?	b	has more than 5,000 items.
3	This stone was	c	is made of gold.
4	The Grand Egyptian Museum	d	It's from Giza.

1- ( )   2- ( )   3- ( )   4- ( )

3 Choose the correct word.

1 This statue is about 3,400 years (old - wide - long - high).

2 This statue is (make - made - making - makes) of limestone.

3 The solar boat is 42 meters (long - old - deep - far).

4 Ancient Egyptians (stayed - believed - took - wanted) that they would come back after death.

5 This gold mask belonged (to - in - with - of) Tutankhamun.

6 I was working in the (river - desert - sea - pool) when I saw something in the sand.

7 They used an old (book - map - pen - ruler) to look for an ancient city.

8 We were looking (to - of - for - up) old artifacts when we found a temple.

9 Where is it (on - of - after - from) ? Giza.

10 Khufu is famous (in - off - for - up) building the Great Pyramid.

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat"

Guiding words:
(wooden boat - 4,600 years old - wood - 42 meters long)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Review on Unit (9)

Vocabulary

cultural heritage	تراث ثقافي	agriculture	زراعة
identity	الهوية	ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
horizontal	أفقي	archaeologist	عالم آثار
monuments	آثار	site	موقع أثري
temple	معبد	calendar	تقويم
civilization	حضارة	cruise	جولة نيلية
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية	board game	لعبة لوحية
engravings	نقوش	bury	يدفن
mask	قناع	carve	ينحت
perfume	عطر	clay	صلصال
pottery	أواني فخارية	counter	بيدق (قطعة شطرنج)
tool	أداة يدوية	vase	زهرية
tourism	سياحة	irrigation	ريّ
archaeology	علم الآثار	flooding season	موسم الفيضان
limestone	حجر جيري	harvesting season	موسم الحصاد
tomb	مقبرة	growing season	موسم الزراعة
bar chart	تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة	vertical	رأسي

Help your child revise unit (9).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة







The Past Simple

Form The second form of the verb

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم والشاذ يحفظ)

- I visited Luxor last week.
- They saw the lion in the zoo.

Usage

يُعبّر عن حدث انتهى في الماضي

I went to school late yesterday.

Negative

فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

- We didn't watch TV yesterday.

Question

Yes, No question

Did + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر?

Did you study English yesterday?

- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.

Wh-question

Q.W + did + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر?

Where did you go yesterday?

- I went to the club.

Key words

yesterday	أمس	last	الماضي	... ago	منذ
in 2010	في عام ٢٠١٠	in the past	في الماضي		

Help your child revise grammar unit "9".

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع قواعد الوحدة التاسعة

The Past Continuous الماضي المستمر

Form

I - He - She - It	a singular noun →	was	+ v + ing
They - You - We	a plural noun →	were	

✎ He was sitting under a tree.

Negative

Subject الفاعل + wasn't/weren't + v + ing?

✎ We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

Yes, No question

Was / Were + subject الفاعل + v + ing?

➤ Were they playing tennis?

✎ Yes, they were. ✎ No, they weren't.

Wh-question

Q.W + was/were + subject الفاعل + v + ing?

➤ What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

✎ I was watching TV.

Keywords

yesterday morning	yesterday evening
at 3 a.m yesterday	

Usage

➤ To express an action that was happening at a certain past time.

يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر ليعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا لفترة محددة في الماضي:

✎ They were having dinner yesterday evening.

Past continuous + when + Past simple
ماضي المستمر عندما ماضي بسيط

✎ The archaeologist was digging when she found an old box.

When عندما + past simple ماضي بسيط + past continuous ماضي مستمر

✎ When the archaeologist found an old box, she was digging.



"Your country's heritage"



A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. Egypt's heritage comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings and objects from the past. People in ancient Egypt built temples. They developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Egypt is full of historical sites. I enjoy learning about our heritage.

"Farming in the past"

Farming is very important in Egypt. It's an important part of its heritage. The Nile used to flood every year making the soil more fertile. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt which were connected to the Nile. The flooding season when the field was full of water. The growing season when farmers planted crops. The harvesting season when farmers cut the crops.

"Tourism"



Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of its amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, temples, and pyramids. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases and masks. Tourists can visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They can see the Step Pyramid at Saqqara. They can visit Qaitbay Citadel in Alexandria. They can visit the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings in Luxor.

"Artifacts in ancient Egypt"

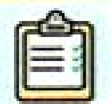


There are a lot of artifacts in ancient Egypt. For example the Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat. It's called a solar boat because ancient Egyptians believed that it would take the person across the skies after death. The statue of Amenhotep III is the largest statue of a family group. Tutankhamun's mask is very important, too.



Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات



Activities on Unit (9)

1 Listen and choose the correct word.

1. Lots of people visit Egypt every (day - week - month - year).
2. Egypt has (good - nice - amazing - fine) archaeological sites.
3. Tourists want to see the large (clubs - monuments - tools - vases).
4. Archaeologists have found lots of (artifacts - flowers - rulers- pens).

2 Listen and complete.

1. The Pyramids and the Sphinx are at ....
2. The Pyramids are .... all over the world.
3. The ancient Egyptians built the .... to protect the pyramids.
4. The ancient Egyptians carved the Sphinx from one huge ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

Luxor - see - interesting - were

Sara : Where .... (1) .... you last week?
Salma : I was on a cruise to ..... (2) ....
Sara : What did you .... (3) .... ?
Salma : I saw the Valley of the Kings.
Sara : Was it .... (4) .... ?
Salma : Yes, it was very interesting.

4 Choose the correct word.

1. When did the (scientists - archaeologists - doctors - vets) find this historical site?
2. You can see lots of (cows - goats - games - engravings) in the temple.
3. Farmers in ancient Egypt planted crops in the (flooding - cutting - growing - harvesting) season.
4. Sara (see - is seeing - saw - sees) a senet game yesterday.
5. The children (was playing - were playing - plays - playing) a game.



5 Fill in the spaces with:

famous - carved - Sphinx - Pyramids

Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the ....(1).......... and the Sphinx at Giza. They are ....(2).......... all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the ....(3).......... to protect the Pyramids. They ....(4).......... it from one huge piece of stone.

6 Read and match.

1	Many tourists visit Luxor	a	a nice game.
2	Alexandria was the	b	from a Nile River cruise.
3	Akil saw his goats	c	capital city of Egypt.
4	My dad made me	d	walking away.

1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )

7 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings, Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. (Carpenters - Teachers - Tourists - Doctors) want to see the large monuments in Egypt.
2. Many tourists visit Luxor from a (Nile - Sea - Lake - Spring) River cruise.
3. Ancient Egyptians (told - bought - buried - Sold) their kings and queens.

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What can tourists see in Luxor?..........
5. Where can you see engravings?..........

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

8 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The nature is beautiful. ( )
2. There was a bottle round the seagull's leg. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Amir has a (tablet - computer - laptop - cell phone) on the table.
4. Amir was (happy - delighted - sad - grateful) about the seagull.

9 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. used - vases - water - They - hold - to - pottery - .

....

2. visiting - museum - the - were - We - .

....

3. are - monuments - Historians - interested - in - .

....

10 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"A visit to Alexandria"

Guiding words:

port - Qaitbay Citadel - capital - Library of Alexandria

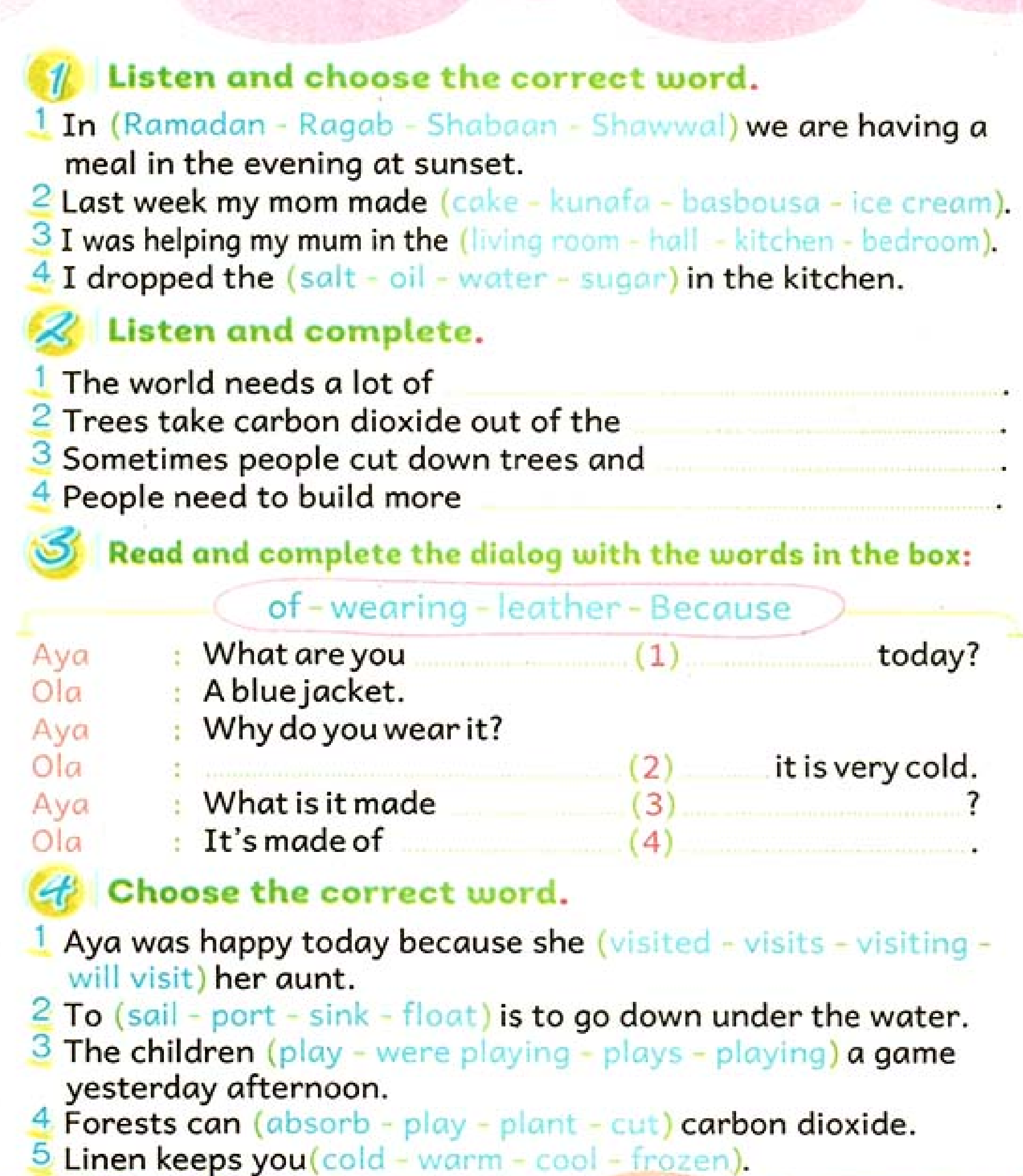
....
....
....
....
....

11 Punctuate the following sentence.

ancient egyptians built the pyramids and the sphinx

....

Review (3)



1 Listen and choose the correct word.

1. In (Ramadan - Ragab - Shabaan - Shawwal) we are having a meal in the evening at sunset.
2. Last week my mom made (cake - kunafa - basbousa - ice cream).
3. I was helping my mum in the (living room - hall - kitchen - bedroom).
4. I dropped the (salt - oil - water - sugar) in the kitchen.

2 Listen and complete.

1. The world needs a lot of ....
2. Trees take carbon dioxide out of the ....
3. Sometimes people cut down trees and ....
4. People need to build more ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

of - wearing - leather - Because

Aya : What are you .... (1) .... today?
Ola : A blue jacket.
Aya : Why do you wear it?
Ola : .... (2) .... it is very cold.
Aya : What is it made .... (3) .... ?
Ola : It's made of .... (4) ....

4 Choose the correct word.

1. Aya was happy today because she (visited - visits - visiting - will visit) her aunt.
2. To (sail - port - sink - float) is to go down under the water.
3. The children (play - were playing - plays - playing) a game yesterday afternoon.
4. Forests can (absorb - play - plant - cut) carbon dioxide.
5. Linen keeps you (cold - warm - cool - frozen).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Fill in the spaces with:

engravings - cruise - buried - Temple

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River ....(1)............... . They can see the ....(2).................... of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians ....(3)............ their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and ....(4)................. in the temples.

6 Read and match.

1. Hawawshi is made
2. Fossil fuels are things
3. Archaeologists have found
4. Linen keeps

a. lots of artifacts.
b. you cool.
c. with bread and meat.
d. like coal, gas and oil.

1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )

7 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. (England - France - Egypt - America) is a fantastic country to visit.
2. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian (traditions - cars - books - lands) before they come.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are the Egyptian people famous for?

....

4. What places can tourists visit in Egypt?

....

Review (3)

8 | The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir took a picture of the bird with his camera. ( )
2. Plastic bags harm the birds. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. People are using too much (metal - gold - plastic - paper) every day.
4. Women were carrying (plastic - metal - cloth - paper) bags.

9 | Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a fantastic - is - visit - Egypt - country - to - .

....

2. is - a machine - energy - make - A turbine - to - .

....

3. made - always - People - clay - from - vases - .

....

10 | Write a short paragraph about:

"Agriculture"

Guiding words:

important - heritage - fertile - civilization - seasons

....

....

....

....

11 | Punctuate the following sentences.

- which cities would you like to visit omar

....

- mazen walks to school every day

....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Non-fiction reader

Shipwrecks

In 2021, archaeologists[1] were working at a site under the Mediterranean[2] Sea, near the north coast[3] of Egypt. This site was the ancient city of Thônis- Heracleion. The archaeologists' modern technology[4] helped them to see what was on the bottom of the sea. Under five meters of clay[5] and bricks, they found a wooden ship. It was over 2,200 years old.

Thônis-Heracleion was a very old city. In the fifth century BCE, it was a very important place for sailors and for people who bought and sold things. It was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria. However, there were lots of natural disasters[6] such as earthquakes[7] and tsunamis[8] at the time. About 1,200 years ago, in the eighth century CE, the city fell into the sea at Abu Qir Bay and disappeared.

In 2001, archaeologists discovered the city. When they dived[9] under the water, they found lots of interesting artifacts at the underwater site, including statues, pottery[10], and coins.

The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that they found there. Archaeologists often find things which are old and broken, but this ship was almost complete.

Archaeologists think that the ship was waiting in the port next to the temple of Amun. An earthquake in about 140 BCE destroyed the temple. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink. The wooden ship was a very large rowing boat[11] and it also had a large sail[12]. It is about 25 meters long. It was a fast ship and it had a flat bottom, like ships that traveled on the Nile. It was similar to the style of some ships built in ancient Egypt, so archaeologists and historians[13] are very excited by this discovery[14]

1. علماء الآثار
2. البحر المتوسط
3. ساحل
4. تكنولوجيا
5. صلصال
6. كوارث
7. زلازل
8. تسونامي
9. غاصوا
10. أواني فخارية
11. قارب
12. شراع
13. مؤرخون
14. اكتشاف

Non-fiction reader

The shipwreck[1] in Abu Qir Bay[2] is buried under clay and bricks, but you can see many other shipwrecks. The Red Sea has lots of places where divers can go down to wreck sites and explore ships under the water.

Lots of ships use the Red Sea, because it lies between Asia and Africa. It also allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. However, there are storms, reefs[3], and strong currents[4] in the Red Sea, which can make it dangerous. Sometimes, ships hit the reefs and sink.

One of the oldest shipwrecks in the Red Sea is the Carnatic. It sank in 1869 when it hit the Abu Nuhas reef. It has been under water for over 150 years and divers can explore the ship and see lots of sea animals. Another famous shipwreck is the Dunraven, which sank in 1876. There are large holes in the boat so divers can swim inside it. Because these ships have been under the water for a long time, they have become artificial[5] reefs. They are homes for fish, turtles, dolphins, and other sea animals. Corals live on the metal surface and there are also lots of different kinds of plants. You have to be good at diving to visit a shipwreck, and you should go in a group. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the Red Sea and see the amazing[6] sights!

1. حطام السفينة
2. خليج
3. شعاب
4. تيارات مائية
5. صناعي
6. مدهش

Read and answer.

1) What did the archaeologists discover when they dived under water?

....

2) Why do lots of ships use the Red Sea?

....

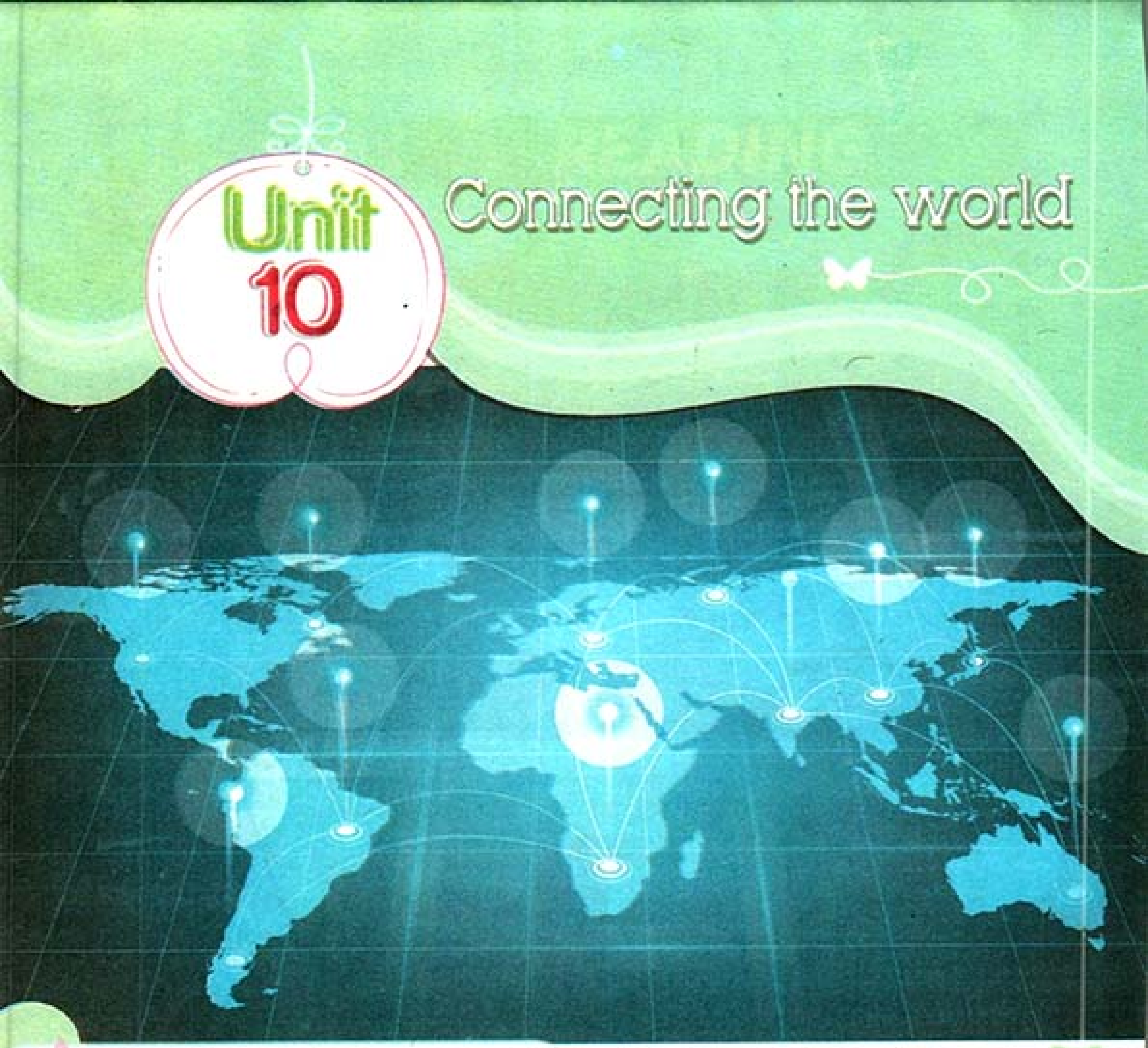
3) Why do tourists come from all over the world to the Red Sea?

....

Theme (4)

I'm a responsible person





In this unit students will ...

- explore different means of communication .
- learn words connected to social media.
- understand and use should and shouldn't in sentences.
- read a story about social media .
- write a letter to a school newspaper.
- listen to a podcast about technological solutions.
- plan a new social media platform only for kids.

Lesson (1)

MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

Key vocabulary 🎧 Listen and repeat.



electronic devices
أجهزة إلكترونية



an email
إيميل - بريد إلكتروني



a presentation
عرض - تقديم



a website
موقع على الإنترنت



a vlog
مدونة عن طريق الفيديو

Means of Communication
وسائل الاتصال



a blog
مدونة



an instant message
رسائل فورية (مستعجلة)



means of communication
وسائل الاتصال

a social media platform
منصة تواصل اجتماعي

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Unit (10) Lesson (1)

Extra Vocabulary

different	مختلف	home page	الصفحة الرئيسية
smoke signals	إشارات دخانية	topics	موضوعات
technology	تكنولوجيا	users	مستخدمون
digital form	شكل رقمي	smartphones	هواتف ذكية
an email account	حساب بريد إلكتروني	tablets	أجهزة التابلت
a private message	رسالة خاصة	laptops	أجهزة لاب توب
except	ما عدا	regularly	بانتظام
a special kind	نوع خاص	sports	رياضات
cooking	الطهي	personal	شخصي
difference	اختلاف	texts	نصوص
reliability	مصداقية	carrier pigeons	حمام زاجل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
talk	يتكلم	talked
help	يساعد	helped
share	يشارك	shared
explain	يشرح	explained
access	يسجل دخول	accessed
belong	يخص	belonged
use	يستخدم	used
start	يبدأ	started
post	يرسل بالبريد	posted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said
send	يرسل	sent
have	يملك	had
see	يرى	saw
give	يعطي	gave
read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made




Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتحدث عن	share information	يشارك معلومات
belong to	يخص / ينتمي إلى	send information	يرسل معلومات
kinds of	أنواع من	post information on	ينشر معلومات (في - على)
similar to	مشابه لـ	instead of	بدلاً من
help with	يساعد في	form of	شكل من

Did you know?



More than 4 billion people use different types of social media around the world. This number is increasing every year.

Definitions

email	a digital form of a letter	بريد إلكتروني
presentation	a way to share information about something or explain something by talking about it	عرض/تقديم
blog	a person website or social media account where someone regular posts written articles	مدونة
website	a home page on the World Wide Web	موقع على الإنترنت
instant message	something that you write and send to someone on a social media platform	رسالة فورية
vlog	a personal website where someone posts short videos	مدونة فيديو

Help your child learn words connected to social media.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات مرتبطة بوسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

Unit (10) Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication[1] ? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place.
In the past, people used smoke signals[2] or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices[3] to help us send messages.

An email[4] is a digital[5] form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

An instant message[6] (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform[7]. It is a private[8] message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.

A presentation[9] is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it.

A website[10] is a home page on the World Wide Web.
Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

A blog[11] is a special kind of websites. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

A vlog[12] is similar to a blog because it's a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

Answer the following questions.

1) What is the message that you can send on a social media platform?
....

2) What is a website? ....

3) Why is a vlog similar to a blog? ....

1. وسائل الاتصال
2. إشارات دخانية
3. أجهزة إلكترونية
4. البريد الإلكتروني
5. رقمي
6. رسالة فورية
7. منصة
8. خاص
9. عرض - تقديم
10. موقع على الإنترنت
11. مدونة
12. مدونة فيديو

Help your child read about means of communication.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وسائل الاتصال





Ancient Egyptians used carrier pigeons to send messages to each other.



1 Read and match:

1	If you like posting videos	a	if you have an account.
2	Magdy has to give	b	website to help him with his science project.
3	Tamer is using a different	c	on her blog.
4	Gameela posts the things she writes about sports	d	you should start a vlog.
5	You can only send an email	e	a presentation about technology.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( ) 5- ( )

2 Choose the correct word.

1. There are many means of (pollution - solution - station - communication) to send messages from one person to another.
2. In the past people used smoke (signals - finals - signs - panels) to communicate.
3. We use technology like electronic (vices - devices - advice - prizes).
4. A/An (device - email - vlog - presentation) is a digital form of a letter.
5. You must have an email (count - account - carrier - clown) to send emails.
6. You can send an instant message on a social media (frame - firm - platform - form).

7. A (smoke - presentation - device -preposition) is a way to share information with others.
8. A (blog - vlog - device - website) is a home page on the World Wide Web.
9. Users can (access - play - plant -enter) websites from different electronic devices like smartphones.
10. A (log - blog - leg - dialog) is a special kind of website.
11. A (log - slog - device - vlog) is similar to a blog.
12. Ancient Egyptians used carrier (butterflies - parrots - cats - pigeons) to send messages to each other.
13. I use my (book - smartphone - telephone - box) to access a website.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. people - can - How - websites - access - ?

....

2. a digital - is - An email - of - form - a letter - .

....

3. of - means - What - you - do - communication - use - ?

....

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

laptops - access - devices - topic- website

A ....(1).............. is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one ....(2)....................... . Users can ....(3).......... websites from different electronic ....(4).......... like smartphones, tablets and ....(5).......... .



5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place.
In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages.
An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 People used (air - gas - steam - smoke) signals or birds to send messages to each other.

2 You must have an email (account - clown - count - topic) to send these kind of messages.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What do you need to send an email?

....

4 What is meant by means of communication"?

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Means of communication"

Guiding words:

smoke signals - email - a blog - a vlog - carrier pigeons

....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

ali sent an email to his friend amr

....



Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE: GIVING ADVICE

Key vocabulary

backpack	حقيبة الظهر	adventure	مغامرة
incredible	لا يصدق - هائل	keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح
publish	ينشر	checklist	قائمة التدقيق

Extra Vocabulary

notebook	كراسة	local newspaper	جريدة محلية
eraser	أستيكه - ممحاة	honey	عسل
writer	كاتب	without	بدون
difficult	صعب	word processor	برنامج معالج النصوص (في الكمبيوتر)
mistakes	أخطاء	adult	شخص بالغ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
open	يفتح	opened
love	يحب	loved
work	يعمل	worked
hand	يسلم / يعطي	handed
prepare	يجهز	prepared
touch	يلمس	touched
practice	يمارس	practiced
correct	يصحح	corrected
change	يغير	changed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
get	يحصل على	got
sit	يجلس	sat
take	يأخذ	took
write	يكتب	wrote
tell	يخبر	told
hurt	يؤذي	hurt
let	يدع - يسمح	let
give	يعطي	gave
choose	يختار	chose

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make ... for	يعد .... لـ	share with	يتشارك مع.
sit at	يجلس على	get better	يتحسن
on the floor	على الأرضية	take a break	يأخذ قسطًا من الراحة (يستريح)
a title for	عنوان لـ	hand to	يسلم لـ
by hand	باليد	without a break	بدون راحة

Listen and read.

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack[1], and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure[2] around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock. "Hi Mom," Adam said. "Do you want to read my new story?"

"Of course I do, honey."

Adam handed his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, "This is an incredible[3] story, Adam. You should let more people read it."

"What do you mean?" Adam asked.

"You know, you should prepare[4] it to share with others."

"OK, but how do I do that, Mom?

"First you should touch type[5] it."

"OK, we're learning how to type at school. Is that when you try to type with out always looking at the keyboard[6]?

"That's right. it might sound difficult, but if you practice, you'll get better and better at it. It's much quicker than writing with a pen, and it's easier to correct or change your work."

"I can do that, Mom."

"Just remember to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. You don't want to hurt your neck or back. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes."

"Yes, that's what my teacher told us," said Adam.

"Then, you can ask the school to publish[7] it in the school newspaper, or even publish it yourself online."

His mom handed the notebook back to him.

"Look at the last page. I made a checklist[8] for you."

1. حقيبة الظهر
2. مغامرة
3. لا يصدق
4. يعد - يجهز
5. يكتب باللمس
6. لوحة المفاتيح
7. ينشر
8. قائمة التدقيق

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

"Publishing Checklist"

- You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type.
- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You should check your spelling. Or you should ask an adult to check it for you.
- You shouldn't forget punctuation. You should check your work.
- You shouldn't work too long without a break. And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.



Language

Giving advice (should - shouldn't)

should + inf.

- **We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.**

e.g. You should choose a title for your story.

e.g. You should check your work.

shouldn't + inf.

- **We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.**

e.g. You shouldn't forget your homework.

e.g. You shouldn't be afraid to ask your teacher for help.



Did you know?

There are different words that are contractions in English.
Shouldn't is one example: shouldn't = should + not.



Help your child understand and use "should" and "shouldn't" to give advice.
ساعد طفلك أن يفهم ويستخدم "should" و "shouldn't" في إعطاء النصيحة

1 Choose the correct word.

1. You (shouldn't - should - can't - isn't) use a capital letter at the beginning of each sentence.
2. You (should - shouldn't - can't - isn't) choose a title for your story.
3. You (shouldn't - isn't - can't - should) use handwriting if you want the school to publish your story in the newspaper.
4. You (shouldn't - can't - should - isn't) ask a friend to read your story before you publish it.
5. You (can - should - shouldn't - is) be afraid to ask your teacher for help.
6. You (shouldn't - should - can - are) hide your writing. Share it with your friends!

2 Give your friend advice. Complete the sentences.

1. Your friend: I'm thirsty.

   Your advice: You should drink something.
2. Your friend: I work a lot.

   Your advice: You ....
3. Your friend: I have a difficult English test tomorrow.

   Your advice: You ....
4. Your friend: I want to learn something.

   Your advice: You ....
5. Your friend: I can't see very well.

   Your advice: You ....



Rewrite Corner

1 Give your friend a hand. (should)
⇨ You should give your friend a hand.

2 Help the poor. (should)
⇨ You should help the poor.

3 Don't hide your writing. (shouldn't)
⇨ You shouldn't hide your writing.

4 Don't forget punctuation. (shouldn't)
⇨ You shouldn't forget punctuation.

1 Choose the correct word.

1 You (shouldn't - should - can't - isn't) study hard.
2 You (should - shouldn't - can - may) hide your writing.
3 They (shouldn't - should - can't - isn't) eat some fruit.
4 He (should - shouldn't - can - may) work too long without a break.
5 She (should - shouldn't - can't - isn't) check her work.

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 Don't forget your homework. (shouldn't)

....

2 Eat some fruit. (should)

....

3 Don't play with matches. (shouldn't)

....

4 Help the poor. (should)

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

hungry - feel - should - eat

Ali : How do you .... (1) .... ?
Amr : I feel .... (2) .... What should I do?
Ali : You should .... (3) .... some fruit.
Amr : What else .... (4) .... I do?
Ali : You should have some rest.

2 Choose the correct word.

1. Adam got home from school, and sat down (on - at - for - in) his desk.
2. Adam took his pencil, notebook and eraser out of his (back - backpack - packet - pocket).
3. Adam's mom is a writer at a local (newspaper - newsagent - zoo - bank).
4. The story was (credible - incredible - believable - good), we can't believe it.
5. You should share your ideas (at - for - with - by) others.
6. I sometimes type without looking at the (mouse - keyboard - screen - case).
7. You can ask the school to (publish - print - type - touch) your story in the school newspaper.
8. I made a checklist (at - by - for - with) you.
9. You (should - shouldn't - can - may) write your story by hand.
10. She (should - shouldn't - can't - isn't) check her work.
11. You (should - shouldn't - can - may) work too long without a break.

12 While writing, you (should - shouldn't - can - may) forget punctuation.

13 You (should - shouldn't - can - may) hide your writing, share it with your friends.

14 You(should - shouldn't - can - is) be afraid to ask your teacher for help.

15 You(should - shouldn't - can't - mustn't) study hard to succeed.

3 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 Study hard to succeed. (should)

....

2 Don't write your story by hand. (shouldn't)

....

3 Check your spelling. (should)

....

4 Don't forget punctuation while writing. (shouldn't)

....

5 Share your ideas with others. (should)

....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 for - I - made - a checklist - you - .

....

2 too - shouldn't - work - You - long - a break - without - .

....

3 check - should - You - work - your - .

....



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 o'clock. Hi Mom, Adam said. 'Do you want to read my new story?' "Of course I do, honey. Adam handed his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Adam loved to (cook - read - write - play) stories.
2. Adam's mom is a (doctor - teacher - writer - mechanic) at the local newspaper.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does the boy go on a great adventure?

....

4. What was Adam's mom's advice to him?

....

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

omar should study science hard

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

READING

Lesson (3)

Key vocabulary

best friends	أفضل الأصدقاء	cyberfriends	أصدقاء على الإنترنت
nasty comments	تعليقات كريهة	settings	الإعدادات (على الجهاز)
a social media account	حساب على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	problem	مشكلة
		wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية

Extra Vocabulary

bell	جرس	horrible	فظيع	kitchen	مطبخ
private	خاص	hobby	هواية	together	معًا - سويًا
project	مشروع	really	حقًا	idea	فكرة
sign	علامة - لافتة	important	هام - مهم	parents	الوالدان
group	مجموعة	photography			التصوير الفوتوغرافي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
sign up	يسجل	signed up
walk	يمشي	walked
ask	يسأل	asked
use	يستخدم	used
need	يحتاج	needed
talk	يتكلم	talked
introduce	يُقدّم	introduced
guess	يُخمّن	guessed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يصنع	made
feel	يشعر	felt
ring	يرن	rang
say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
get	يحصل على	got
know	يعرف	knew
tell	يخبر	told

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

sign in / into	يسجل دخول	talk about	يتحدث - يتكلم عن
sign up for	يسجل في	make fun of	يسخر من
think about	يفكر في	learn about	يتعلّم عن
use .... for	يستخدم ..... لـ	turn off	يُغلق - يطفىء
need ..... for	يحتاج ..... لـ	turn back	يعود - يرجع
set up	يؤسس	say bad things about	يقول أشياء سيئة عن

Youssef Goes Online

The 2 o'clock bell rang. Youssef and his best friend Wael started walking home from school together. "You're thirteen now, aren't you?" asked Wael. 'Yeah. Why?'

"That means you can sign up(1) for a social media account(2) like me."

Youssef thought about this idea for a minute. "I guess(3) I'll have to ask my parents first. What do you use your account for?"

"I post videos. I also made some cyberfriends(4) online," said Wael.

"But who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?" he asked. "No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool!" "I'll think about it. See you tomorrow!" said Youssef.

Youssef got home from school and his mom was in the kitchen.

"Hi, honey. How was school today?"



1. يسجل 2. حساب 3. أظن 4. أصدقاء الإنترنت

Help your child read a story about social media.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي



"Good! Mom, can I get a social media account? Wael has one and he "says it's really cool."
"Do you think you're old enough, Youssef?"
Yes. And I need it for my group project."
Youssef's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it.
The next morning, he signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty(5).
One person said horrible(6) things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.
Youssef told his mom about the bad comments(7).
"I think there are some things you need to learn about using social media," she said. "Sign into your account and go to the settings(8). First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off the comments. That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want, you can turn them back on later." "Thanks, Mom. I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens."

5. كريه - بغيض 6. فظيع 7. تعليقات 8. الإعدادات

Answer the following questions.

1) What does Wael do?

....

2) What did Youssef find when he signed in his account?

....

Choose the correct answer.

3) Youssef's (mom - brother - dad - sister) helped him set up his account.

4) If you have bad comments, sign into your account and go to the (settings - keyboard - mouse - case) to turn comments off.





Help your child read a story about social media.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

Exercises

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

shouldn't - long - social - for - bad

Adam : Does anyone in your family use .... (1) .... media?
Youssef : Yes, they do.
Adam : What do they use it .... (2) ....?
Youssef : For posting videos.
Adam : Is social media good or .... (3) ....?
Youssef : I think it maybe good or bad.
Adam : Should I sit .... (4) .... hours without a break?
Youssef : No, you .... (5) ....

2 Read and match.

1. Social media is
2. You shouldn't
3. He introduced
4. What does Wael

a. do online?
b. himself to his friends.
c. very important.
d. write nasty comments online.

1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )

3 Choose the correct word.

1. You shouldn't write (nasty - good - fine - kind) comments on social media.
2. I also made some (bully - cyberfiends - enemies - families) online.
3. Everyday I (put - do - make - play) some videos on social media.
4. (Photograph - Photographer - Photography - Picture) is my favorite hobby.

5. Someone made (funny - fun - fan - fin) of Youssef on social media.
6. I sign up (at - by - for - in) a social media account.
7. (Sign - Play - Go - Come) into your account and go to the settings to turn off the comments.
8. You should make your page (common - private - general - bad).
9. (Private - General - Social - Online) media is very important.
10. You sometimes need to turn (at - by - off - on) the comments if they are nasty.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. do - use - you - What - account - your - for - ?

....

2. some - made - I - online - cyberfriends - .

....

3. media - social - Is - or - good - bad - ?

....

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Youssef's dad helped him set up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it. The next morning, he signed into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty.

One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Youssef's dad helped him set up his account (before - during - after - now) dinner.
2. One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke (Arabic - English - French - Spanish).

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's Youssef's favorite hobby?

....

4. How did Youssef feel at the end?

....



6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Social media"

Guiding words:

important - account - cyberfriends - nasty - turn off

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following sentences.

- mazen made some cyberfriends online

....

- nahla has a new social media account

....

WRITING

Lesson (4)

Key vocabulary — Listen and repeat.

create	ينشئ	reports	تقارير	poetry	شِعر
global community	مجتمع عالمي	improve	يُحسن	grade	صف دراسي
currently	حاليًا	safely	بأمان	design	تصميم

Extra Vocabulary

because	لأن - بسبب	general	عام
interesting	شيق - ممتع	college	كلية
projects	مشروعات	weekend	نهاية الأسبوع
club	نادي	sincerely	المخلص - بإخلاص
writing club	نادي الكتابة	editor	محرر
science club	نادي العلوم	fiction	خيال
games club	نادي الألعاب	free time	وقت فراغ
cooking club	نادي الطهي	perfect idea	فكرة رائعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
create	ينشئ	created
improve	يحسن	improved
publish	ينشر	published
share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought
have	يملك - يمتلك	had
do	يفعل	did
read	يقرأ	read




Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

report about	يكتب تقريرًا عن	write for	يكتب لـ
lots of	كثير من	at school	في المدرسة
improve writing	يحسن الكتابة	at college	في الكلية
share ideas	يتشارك الأفكار	join the club	يلتحق بالنادي
create a club	ينشئ نادي	for fun	للمتعة

Read the letter.

Dear Editor,

I'm writing because I think that the school should create(1) an after-school writers' club. Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade(2) student, I like to write short stories and reports(3) about things that I think are interesting(4). I write for my projects(5) and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in (6) writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school club is a perfect idea. There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, and the cooking club. Currently(7), there is no story writing or poetry(8) writing club at our school. First, we should create one general writing club. If we improve(9) our writing skills now, it will help us in the future in high school and at college. It will also help us write, publish, and share our ideas with our global community(10). Don't you agree?

Sincerely yours,
Amira El-Sayyed
4th grade

1. يؤسس - يبتكر	2. الصف الرابع	3. تقارير	4. شيق
5. مشاريع	6. مهتم بـ	7. حاليًا	8. شعر
9. يحسن	10. مجتمع عالمي		

Answer the following questions.

1) How will improving writing skills help us? ....

2) Why is Amira writing this letter? ....



Use these tips when you write a letter to the editor of a newspaper.

- Start your letter with "Dear Editor,".
- Finish your letter with "Sincerely yours,".
- Say why you are writing in the first sentence.
- Give a couple of examples to support your idea.

Write a letter to the editor of your school newspaper.

Ask the school to create a new club that you want to join. Read the tips and use Amira's letter as a model.

"The computer club"

Dear Editor,
I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after - school computer club. Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade student, I like to write about using computer that is interesting and useful for my classmates. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are interested in writing after school. If we improve our computer using skills now, it will help us in the future in high school and at college.



Help your child write a letter to the editor of a newspaper.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب خطابًا لمحرر جريدة

Punctuation

- We put a period (.) at the end of a sentence.
- We put a comma (,) after "First / Dear Editor," and in lists.
- We put a question mark (?) at the end of a question.

Write the missing punctuation in these sentences.

1. I like to write letters poetry and stories ....
2. First, I want to write a letter ....
3. Dear Editor ....
4. Do you like writing stories ....

Prepositions (in - at)

- We use (in) before periods of the day and "the future"
- We use (at) before places like (school - zoo)

Write the missing prepositions.

1. ....the morning / afternoon
2. .... school / college
3. .... the future

Conjunctions (and - on - but)

- We use (and) to join similar ideas.

e.g. I like English and Arabic.

- We use (but) to join contrasting ideas.

e.g. He is poor, but he is happy.

- (or) is used instead of (and) in negative sentences.

e.g. She doesn't like maths or Arabic.

Read and complete with:

(or - and - but)

1. I don't have any free time today, ... I am free this weekend.
2. She doesn't like reading ....writing.
3. I like poetry .... fiction.



1 Listen and complete.

1. I like English .... Arabic.
2. I go to school .... the morning.
3. I like football matches, ... I don't play it.
4. I'd like to .... an after-school writers' club.
5. I want to .... my writing skill.

2 Choose the correct word.

1. He wants to (play - create - cook - build) an after-school writer's club.
2. We should (prove - protect - improve - protest) our writing skills.
3. Mona is in (blade - grade - club - grape) four in our school.
4. I go home (on - at - in - by) the afternoon.
5. After school, I will join college (at - on - in - by) the future.
6. I like poetry (but - and - or - so) fiction.
7. She doesn't like reading (and - but - or - for) writing.
8. He is a student (at - on - of - by) school.
9. Some of my friends are interested (on - at - in - by) writing after school.

3 Read and correct the underlined words.

1. I like football <u>but</u> handball.

....

2. He is poor, <u>and</u> he is happy.

....

3. I go to school <u>on</u> the morning.

....

4. I don't like meat <u>and</u> fish.

....



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read and match.

1 Amira is in
2 I like math
3 I read books
4 Do you like

a writing stories?
b at the school library.
c grade four.
d and science.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Amira's school day"

Guiding words:
gets - school - bus - Maths - home - homework - bed - clever - love

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

mazen wants to write a letter to ahmed

....



- SOLUTIONS TO PROBLEMS IN EGYPT
- PROJECT

Lessons (5&6)

Key vocabulary



a smog-free tower
برج تنقية الهواء



electric cars
سيارات كهربائية



scrubber
مدخنة تنقية الغازات والأبخرة

Extra Vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	solution	حل
mostly	عمومًا/في الغالب	factories	مصانع
podcast	إذاعة صوتية	jewelry	حُلي
indoor	داخلي	inventor	مخترع
outdoor	خارجي	nervous	عصبي/متوتر
apartment	شقة	confident	واثق
buildings	مباني	rain	مطر
power plant	محطة توليد الطاقة	greening	زراعة سياج من النباتات والأشجار
nature	البيئة	insects	حشرات
problem	مشكلة	fossil fuels	وقود حفري



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
cause	يتسبّب	caused
talk	يتكلّم	talked
collect	يَجمَع	collected
invent	يخترع	invented
contact	يتصل	contacted
move	يَحرّك /ينقل	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يصنع	made
find	يجد	found
keep	يحفظ	kept
grow	ينمو	grew
build	يبني	built
get	يحصل على	got

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتكلّم عن	look at	ينظر إلى
listen to	يستمع إلى	eye contact with	تواصل بصري مع
collect with	يَجمَع بـ	work with	يعمل مع
start with	يبدأ بـ	think of	يفكر في
provide shade	يمدنا بالظل	keep the building warm	يحافظ على تدفئة المبنى
sum up	يَلخّص	harmful to	ضار لـ





The first electric car was invented in the 1830s in Scotland by the inventor Robert Anderson.



Unit (10) Lessons (5&6)

Read the letter.



Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories and power plants. When we burn fossil and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution. We have learned about scrubbers and smog-free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building. Why is this helpful? The plants help to clean the air because they absorb carbon dioxide and they produce oxygen. Then plants also catch dust and other harmful pollution. In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in summer. The plants keep the buildings warm in winter. The cooler temperatures are also easier for people to live in. The plants also provide homes for bees, insects,and birds, so greening helps nature, too.

Answer the following questions.

1 What causes air pollution?

....

2 How does greening help nature?

....



To make a good presentation you can use these presentation phrases

لعمل عرض جيد، يمكنك استخدام هذه العبارات.

1. Good morning / afternoon, everyone.
2. Today I'm going to talk about ....
3. Let's start with ....
4. Now,let's look at ....
5. To finish/To sum up, ...
6. Are there any questions?
7. Thank you very much.



Tips for a good presentation:

إرشادات لعرض جيد.

- Be confident.
- Smile 😊 .
- Make eye contact with the class.
  If you are nervous,look at a friend first.
- Speak slowly. Don't talk too loudly or too softly.
- Don't move around a lot. Keep your feet in the same place.
- Use some of the phrases above.



Help your child how to make a good presentation.

ساعد طفلك كيف يقدم عرضًا جيدًا.





1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

solutions - causes - Air pollution - factories - problem

Omar : What is the most dangerous ....(1)............?

Baraa : ....(2)............ is the most dangerous problem.

Omar : What ....(3)................................air pollution?

Baraa : Smoke from ....(4)............ and cars.

Omar : What should we do?

Baraa : We should find ....(5)............ to these problems.

2 Choose the correct word.

1 Dr Hegazy talks mostly about (outdoor - door - window - home) air pollution.

2 The (fossil fuels - rain - tsunami - trees) make air pollution worse.

3 A/An (smog - smoke - flu - tree) free towers help to clean gases and pollution from factories.

4 When you give a presentation, make (ear - mouth - eye - hand) contact with the class.

5 Don't move around a lot. Keep your (hands - feet - legs - eyes) in the same place.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 air - make - Fossil fuels - pollution - worse - .

....

2 causes - air - What - pollution - ?

....

3 find - must - We - to - solutions - our problems - .

....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read and match:

1 The smog-free tower is
2 Are there
3 I'm going to talk about
4 Let's

a start with this problem.
b air pollution.
c 17 metres tall.
d any questions?

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Air pollution"

Guiding words:

smoke - factories - cause - solution - trees



....

....

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i think air pollution is a dangerous problem

....

Review on Unit (10)

Vocabulary

blog	مدونة	checklist	قائمة التدقيق
email	إيميل / البريد الإلكتروني	nasty	كريه / بغيض
vlog	مدونة فيديو	cyberfriends	أصدقاء الإنترنت
website	موقع على الإنترنت	comments	تعليقات
access	دخول - مدخل	technology	تكنولوجيا
adventure	مُغامرة	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
incredible	لا يُصدّق - هائل	scrubber	مدخنة تنقية الغازات والأبخرة
keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح	improve	يُحسّن
create	ينشئ	reports	تقارير
currently	حاليًا	jewelry	حُلي
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	presentation	عرض / تقديم
means of communication			وسائل الأتصال
instant message			رسالة فورية
electronic device			جهاز إلكتروني
social media account			حساب علي موقع التواصل الاجتماعي
social media platform			منصة وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
smog-free tower			برج تنقية الهواء
global community			مجتمع عالمي



Help your child revise unit (10).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.



Giving advice (should - shouldn't)

should + inf.

- **We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.**

e.g. You should choose a title for your story.

e.g. You should check your work.

shouldn't + inf.

- **We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.**

e.g. You shouldn't forget your homework.

e.g. You shouldn't be afraid to ask your teacher for help.

Remember

- We put a period (.) at the end of a sentence.
- We put a comma (,) after "First / Dear Editor," and in lists.
- We put a question mark (?) at the end of the question.
- We use (and) to join similar ideas.

e.g. I like English and Arabic.

- We use (but) to join contrasting ideas.

e.g. He is poor, but he is happy.

- (or) is used instead of (and) in negative sentences.

e.g. She doesn't like maths or Arabic.



Writing Corner

"Means of communication"

There are a lot of means of communication. They help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. You must have an account to send emails. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. A blog is a special kind of website. A vlog is a personal website where people post videos for others.

"Air pollution"

Air pollution is one of the most dangerous problems we face these days. It is caused by smoke from cars or factories which lead to unhealthy and not clear air. Pollution is harmful, so we should find solutions to this problem.

"Social media"

Social media is very important. You can send messages and post videos. You also make some cyberfriends online. You should use it in a useful way. You shouldn't write nasty comments. If you find this, you can turn off the comments. Never bully your friends on social media.

Write a letter to your manager. Ask him to create a new games club.

Dear manager,

I'm writing because I think that the school should create an after-school games club. As a fourth-grade student, I'd like to practise sports after school. It's fun and interesting.

Some of my friends are also interested in games after school. So I think it's a perfect idea.

Sincerely yours,

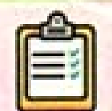
Ali Ahmed

4th grade



Help your child write a text about a topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب نصًا عن موضوع ما.



Activities on Unit (10)

1 Listen and choose the correct word.

1. I'm very (bored - good - bad - tired) today.
2. Last night I played board games with my (brother - sister - dad - mom) .
3. I had dinner and (made - played - watched - cooked) TV.
4. I went to bed (early - late - now - then) .

2 Listen and complete.

1. I love playing ....
2. I really want to join the school ....
3. They are choosing the team .... month.
4. My .... don't like football.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

topic - access - devices - website

A ....(1).......... is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one ....(2).......... . Users can ....(3).......... websites from different electronic ....(4).......... like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many means of communication. A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access websites from different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets, and laptops.

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking .

A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts .

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 A (blog - vlog - log - advice) is a special kind of website.

2 Websites are usually about (one - two - three - four) topic.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 How can users access websites?

....

4 What is the difference between a blog and a vlog?

....

5 The Reader.

A) **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1 Amir sent the picture of the seagull to his friends. (   )

2 People use billions of plastic bags in Egypt. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 The friends meet at Amir's (room - garden - school - house).

4 The friends were (happy - worried - delighted - excited) about the bird.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6 Choose the correct word.

1 A (vlog - blog - website - presentation) is a home page on the World Wide Web.

2 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) forget punctuation while writing.

3 Some comments on social media are good, but others are (glad - nasty - kind - nice).

4 You (should - shouldn't - can't - may) make eye contact with the class.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 need - do - you - What - an email - send - to - ?

....

2 a difficult - have - I - test - math - tomorrow - .

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Pros and cons of social media"

Guiding words:

(important - send - chat - waste - too long - break - eye)

....

....

....

....

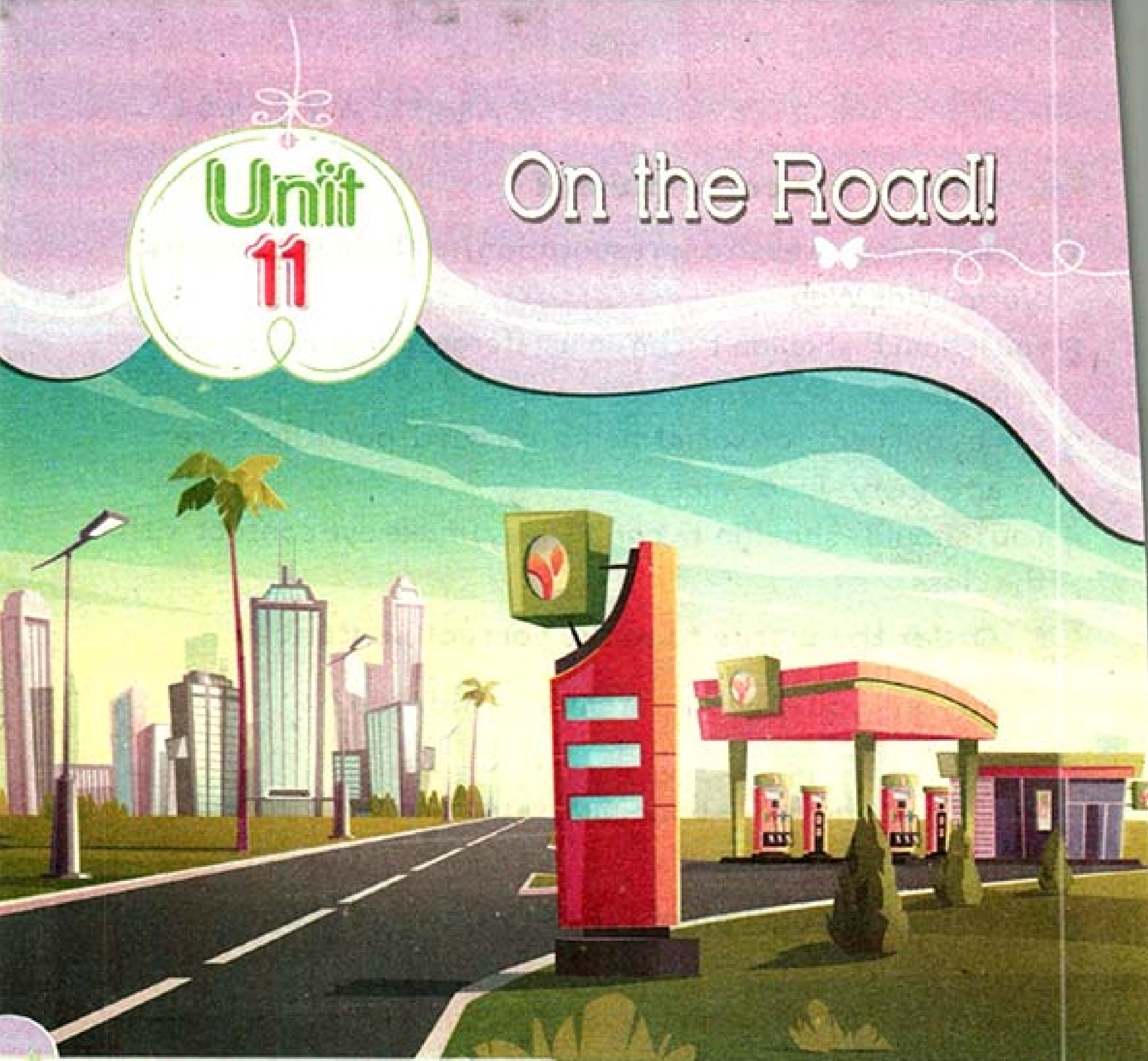
....

....

....

Unit 11

On the Road!



In this unit students will ...

- explore different types of transportation.
- contrast urban and rural lifestyles.
- learn words connected to transportation.
- review comparative and superlative adjectives.
- read a text about the history of transportation.
- read and write a plan for an ideal city and transportation network.
- iisten to a radio show about transportation around the world.
- talk about different transportation around the world.
- create a radio show about transportation in Egypt.

TRANSPORTATION

Lesson (1)



Listen and say.



Stop
قف



Go slow
سر ببطء

Traffic Signs
لافتات المرور



wear a seat belt
ارتدي حزام أمان



Don't turn left
لا تتجه لليسار



animals on the road
حيوانات على الطريق

Help your child identify traffic signs.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على لافتات المرور

Unit (11) Lesson (1)

Extra Vocabulary

transportation	نقل / مواصلات	traffic jam	ازدحام المرور
destination	وجهة الوصول	nowadays	في هذه الأيام
public transportation	مواصلات عامة	trip	رحلة
traffic lights	إشارات المرور	activities	أنشطة
problem	مشكلة	pollution	تلوث
exciting	مثير		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
cause	يسبب	caused
love	يحب	loved
stop	يتوقف	stopped
move	يتحرك	moved
reach	يصل	reached
continue	يستمر	continued

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met
sit	يجلس	sat
take	يأخذ / يستغرق (وقتًا)	took
make	يجعل	made
wear	يرتدي	wore
leave	يغادر	left

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take an hour	يستغرق ساعة	sit in	يجلس في
on my way to	في طريقي إلى	reach in...	يصل في خلال
make the traffic worse	يجعل المرور أسوأ	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
exciting places to live	أماكن ممتعة للمعيشة	too far	بعيد جدًا
on time	في الوقت المحدد	Be careful.	كن حذرًا.
too + الصفة + to + inf	جدًا لدرجة أن لا	in front of	أمام

 Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.

Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public transportation. However, many cities nowadays have a big problem: traffic(1).

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam(2) on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip(3) to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights(4) are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time(5). I can't make the trip on foot(6) because my school is too far to walk to. We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination(7) you want.

1. المرور
2. ازدحام مروري
3. رحلة
4. إشارات المرور
5. في الوقت المحدد
6. سيرًا على الأقدام
7. وجهة الوصول

Answer the following questions.

1) Do you love your city? ....

2) How long does the trip to your school take? ....

3) Why can't you make the trip on foot? ....



Did you know?

There are more than 1.4 billion vehicles on the Earth. There are about 7.2 million electric cars.



In 1868, the first traffic light was in London in front of the Houses of Parliament. (البرلمان)



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

trip - jam - always - traffic

Anas : Is there a lot of .... (1) .... where you live?
Seif : Yes, there is.
Anas : Do you sit in a traffic .... (2) .... on your way to school?
Seif : Not often.
Anas : Do you have a long .... (3) .... to school?
Seif : Yes, I .... (4) .... have.

2 Choose the correct word.

1. Do you go to school (in - on - at - by) foot?
2. Cities are (bored - bad - exciting - ugly) places to live.
3. Are there traffic (lights - lamps - candles - bags) where you live?
4. You must wear your seat (cap - jacket - belt - hat) .
5. Go (fast - slowly - quickly - quick). There are children playing.
6. Be (careful - careless - polite - rude). There are animals on the road.
7. The train will reach its (destination - transportation - place - seat) in about an hour.
8. All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of (revolution - station - pollution - solution) .
9. Malak is never on (place - time - hour - minute) . She's always late.
10. Cars, buses and trains are good means of (transportation - evaporation - destination - station) .

3 Read and match:

1	You cannot	a	public transportation.
2	We have good	b	trip on foot.
3	We have to sit in	c	turn left.
4	I can't make the	d	a traffic jam on our way to school.

1- ( )   2- ( )   3- ( )   4- ( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Reem. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting place to live. I do a lot of activities and meet a lot of friends. I love my city very much but I have a big problem. Every day, I have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The trip to school takes one hour. I leave home very early to get to school on time. My school is very far so I can't go on foot. Buses are good but they don't always go to the destination I want.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Reem leaves home very early to get to school (in - at - on - by) time.

2 She sits in a traffic (juice - jam - bread - bottle) .

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Where does Reem live? ....

4 How long does the trip to school take? ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 your - must - belt - You - wear - seat - .

....

2 places - live - Cities - exciting - to - are - .

....

3 get - school - Do - to - time - you - on - ?

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Traffic"

Guiding elements:

1) Is there a lot of traffic in your neighbourhood?
2) How long is your trip to school?
3) How often do you get into a traffic jam?
4) What colors are the traffic lights for "Go" and "Stop"?

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

LANGUAGE

Lesson (2)

Key vocabulary Listen and say.



green spaces
مساحات خضراء



recycle
يعيد تدوير

Cleaner urban environment
بيئة حضرية أكثر نظافة



bike paths
حارات/ مسارات للدراجات



recycling bins
صناديق إعادة التدوير

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions

green spaces	empty green areas	مساحات خضراء
recycle	to treat waste materials so that they can be used again	يعيد تدوير
bike paths	a road for bikes only	حارات / مسارات للدراجات
residents	people who live in a particular place	سكان
recycling bins	bins for things which will be treated again and be used	صناديق إعادة التدوير
volunteer	someone who offers to do something for free	متطوع
reduce	to make something smaller or less	يقلل
reuse	to use something again	يعيد استخدام

Extra Vocabulary

science museum	متحف العلوم	garbage	قمامة
important	مهم	angry	غاضب
glass	زجاج	neighborhood	حي سكني
paper	ورق	waste	نفايات
plastic	بلاستيك	ecological	بيئي
metal	معدن	friendly	ودود
famous	مشهور	messy	فوضوي
desert	صحراء	expensive	غالي الثمن

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Unit (11) Lesson (2)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
create	يبتكر	created
need	يحتاج	needed
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled
reduce	يقلل	reduced
reuse	يعيد استخدام	reused
cry	يبكي	cried
dislike	يكره	disliked
disconnect	يفصل	disconnected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant
ride	يركب	rode
throw	يلقي / يرمي	threw
learn	يتعلم	learned (t)
think	يعتقد	thought
go	يذهب	went
have	يملك	had
read	يقرأ	read

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

reduce the waste	يقلل النفايات
learn a lot about	يتعلم الكثير عن
be the best	يكون الأفضل
It's important to	من المهم أن
need to	يحتاج أن
That sounds like a good idea to me.	هذه تبدو فكرة جيدة لي.
use for	يستخدم لـ
pick up garbage	يلتقط (يجمع) القمامة
make me angry	يغضبني
as much as possible	قدر الإمكان / قدر المستطاع

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.

Dina: Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?

Talia: Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment.

Dina: Oh, really? What did you learn?

Talia: Well, it's important to have green spaces[1] in a city. The air is cleaner there. And people are happier when they have green spaces too. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle[2] water.

Dina: That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?

Talia: Yes, and we need bike paths[3] for people to ride their bikes on.

Dina: I agree. What can residents[4] do to help?

Talia: One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins[5] for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal. And I learned that in some places, people volunteer[6] to pick up garbage in parks.

Dina: People who throw garbage really make me angry! I'd like to be the best volunteer in my neighborhood!

Talia: And do you know about the 3 Rs?

Dina: I don't think so.

Talia: Reduce[7], Reuse[8], and Recycle. Reduce the waste you create. Reuse things as much as possible before buying new ones. And recycle everything you can.

Dina: I hope we can all be more ecological in the future.

1. مساحات خضراء	2. يعيد تدوير	3. حارات للدراجات	4. سكان
5. صناديق إعادة التدوير	6. يتطوع	7. يقلل	8. يعيد استخدام

Answer the following questions.

1) Why do some people volunteer? ....

2) Who makes you angry? ....



Did you know?

Students at the University of Fayoum can share bikes from three "bike stations".

هل تعلم أن طلاب جامعة الفيوم يمكنهم مشاركة الدراجات من ثلاث محطات للدراجات.

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives

Usage: We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things. نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Short Adjectives have one or two syllables.
الصفات القصيرة تتكون من مقطع أو مقطعين .

Form: adj. الصفة + er + than



cleaner than



e.g. The dress is cleaner than the shirt.



1. Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.
مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، فقط نضيف (r) للصفة.



nicer than



e.g. The shirt is nicer than the T-shirt.

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.
مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، تضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.



fatter than



e.g. The horse is fatter than the dog.

3 Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، فإننا نحول حرف y إلى i ونضيف er.



e.g. The tiger is heavier than the cat.



more / less + adj. الصفة + than

e.g. An electric car is more expensive than a bike.



When we compare two things with a comparative adjective, we use the word than: Egypt is bigger than Tunisia.

Superlative Adjectives

Usage: We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.

نستخدم صيغة التفضيل لمقارنة شخص ما أو شيء ما مع مجموعة أخرى.

Form:

the + adj. الصفة + est

small → the smallest

e.g. The ant is the smallest.

Unit (11) Lesson (2)



1 Adjectives ending in (- e), only add (-st).
الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (st-) فقط .

large → the largest

e.g. These recycling bins are the largest.

2 Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant. الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الساكن الأخير ونضيف est.

big → the biggest

e.g. The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

3 Adjectives ending in (- y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est). الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy → the heaviest

e.g. The blue whale is the heaviest animal in the sea.

Longadjectives the most / least + adj. الصفة

e.g. The green car is the most expensive.



1. The bike is smaller than the car. (bigger)

⇨ The car is bigger than the bike.

2. Mazen is tall but Amr is taller. (Amr ....)

⇨ Amr is taller than Mazen.

3. No car is more expensive than this car. (This car)

⇨ This car is the most expensive one.

Help your child to review comparative and superlative adjectives.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة صفات المقارنة وصيغ التفضيل

1 Choose the correct word.

1. Trees are (large - larger - largest - small) than flowers.
2. The film is (the most interesting - interesting - boring - more interesting) than the book.
3. The bike is (smaller - small - smallest - big) than the car.
4. An electric car is (more - most - less - many) expensive than a bike.
5. Cairo is the (large - larger - largest - small) city in Egypt.

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1. The cat is big. The dog is bigger. (bigger than)

....

2. No river is longer than the Nile. (longest)

....

3. Boys are friendly. Girls are friendlier. (than)

....

4. My father is old. My grandfather is older. (older than)

....

5. Tunisia is big. Egypt is bigger. (than)

....

6. The ant is smaller than the bee. (bigger)

....

7. The country is clean. The city is cleaner. (than)

....

8. Anas is taller than Seif. (shorter)

....

The Prefix البادئات (dis - re - un)

The prefix "re-" means "again" as in:

⇨ reuse : to use again ⇨ replay : to play again

⇨ recycle : to make again ⇨ rewrite: to write again

e.g. I reuse plastic bottles.

The prefixes "un-" and "dis-" mean "not" as in:

⇨ unhappy : not happy ⇨ unhealthy: not healthy

⇨ unfriendly: not friendly ⇨ unpolpular : not popular

⇨ dislike : don't / doesn't like ⇨ disconnect: not connect

⇨ dishonest : not honest ⇨ disagree: don't / doesn't agree

e.g. Sweets are unhealthy.

e.g. I dislike playing tennis but I like football.

Choose the correct word.

1. To use something again means to (dislike - unhealthy - reuse - rewrite) it.
2. Kareem is crying. He is (happy - glad - delighted - unhappy).
3. I (like - love - likes - dislike) playing tennis but I like football.
4. The teacher told me to (reuse - replay - rewrite - recycle) the lesson again.
5. When we make something again, we (reuse - recycle - use - disconnect) it.
6. (Disconnect - Disagree - Disadvantage - Connect) the computer after using it.
7. My father asked us to (recycle - break - reply - rewrite) the shopping bags.



Help your child identify the prefixes.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معاني المقاطع البادئة



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

recycle - spaces - paths - urban

Amira : How do we create a cleaner .... (1) .... environment?

Heba : We should have green .... (2) .... in a city.

Amira : How can we water them?

Heba : We can .... (3) .... water.

Amira : What else do we need?

Heba : We need bike .... (4) ....

2 Choose the correct word.

1. You should (reduce - reuse - recycle - use) the waste you create.
2. Residents should use (cycling - recycling - circle - cycle) bins.
3. It's important to have (red - yellow - green - black) spaces in a city.
4. A (volunteer - teacher - doctor - dentist) is someone who does something for free.
5. I went to the science (park - bank - hotel - museum) yesterday.
6. The Nile is the (longest - longer - long - small) river in the world.
7. Cats are (friendlier - friendly - friendliest - friend) than tigers.
8. The baby is the (young - younger - youngest - small) one in the family.
9. Parks are greener (the - than - then - now) the desert.
10. Reading is (more - most - least - little) interesting than watching TV.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday I went on a school trip to the science museum. There, I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment. I learned that it's important to have green spaces in a city to have cleaner air. Green spaces make people happier. To do this, we need more parks and trees in our cities. We can recycle water to water them. I learned that we should reduce cars in our city. We should use bikes more. So, we need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on. Residents should help also by using recycling bins.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 I went to the (park - science museum - zoo - bank) yesterday.

2 We should (recycle - reduce - reuse - use) water to water the plants.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 How should residents help?

....

4 Why do we need bike paths?

....

4 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box.

unhealthy - disconnect - dislike - unhappy - bigger

1 Egypt is .... than Tunisia.

2 I .... playing tennis but I like football.

3 Sweets are ....

4 Seif is crying because he is ....

5 When you finish using the computer, ... it.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 busier - Cairo - Damietta - than - is - .

....

2 is - world - Nile - The - longest - the - river - in the - .

....

3 museum - went - I - to - the - yesterday - .

....

4 are - more - Cats - than - friendly - tigers - .

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"A cleaner urban environment"

Guiding words:

green spaces - recycle - bike paths - recycling bins

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

the village is greener than the desert

....

Lesson (3)

TRANSPORTATION IN THE PAST

Key vocabulary

Listen and repeat.



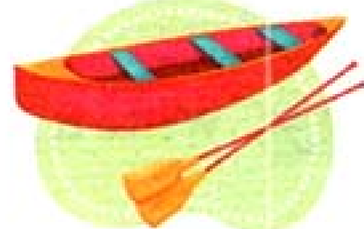
walking
المشي



a mule
بغل



a rocket
صاروخ



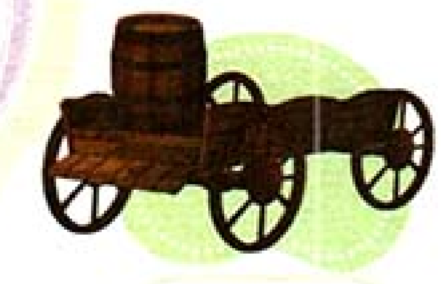
a canoe
زورق

Kinds of transportation
أنواع وسائل النقل و المواصلات





a subway
مترو



a wagon
عربة (نقل)



an airplane
طائرة



a steam train
قطار بخاري

Help your child identify type of transportation.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع وسائل المواصلات.

Extra Vocabulary

highway	طريق سريع	goods	بضائع
types	أنواع	rural areas	مناطق ريفية
humans	بشر	steam engine	محرك (قاطرة) بخارية
rope	حبل	gasoline	بنزين - غازولين
wheel	عجلة	distance	مسافة
cart	عربة كارو	continent	قارة
forms	أشكال	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
skiff	قارب بدائي مصنوع من نبات البردي	direction	اتجاه
wind	رياح	high-speed trains	قطارات فائقة السرعة
the country	الريف	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
papyrus	ورق البردي	oars	مجاديف
sail	شراع	roofs	أسطح
invention	اختراع	streetcar	الترام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
move	ينتقل	moved
invent	يخترع	invented
start	يبدأ	started
change	يغير	changed
appear	يظهر	appeared
transport	ينقل	transported
design	يصمم	designed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began
come	يأتي	came
run	يجري	ran
buy	يشتري	bought
fly	يطير	flew
send	يرسل	sent
make	يصنع	made

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move from ..... to	ينتقل / ينقل من ..... إلى	run on	يدار بـ
transport .... to	ينقل ..... إلى	fly through	يطير عبر (خلال)
along the river	على طول النهر	bad for	ضار بـ

Listen and read.

Transportation Then and Now

Transportation is the way that people move from one place to another. It is also the way that people move things from one place to another. A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules[1], donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons[2] and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily. In rural areas, many people still use these means of transportation today.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines[3] could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

The first car that ran on gasoline also appeared in the 1800s.

People bought cars to make their lives easier. Cities like London and Boston had some of the first streetcars[4] and subway systems[5]. The subway in London opened in 1863. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast.

1. بغال
2. عربات نقل
3. محركات (قاطرات) بخارية
4. الترام
5. أنظمة المترو

Help your child listen and read about the history of transportation.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ عن تاريخ النقل والمواصلات

From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies. Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the Moon in rockets[6]. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing[7] cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

6. صواريخ 7. يطور

Answer the following questions.

1) Where was the first steam train? ....

2) What are engineers designing? ....

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway[1] was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of transportation.

Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus[2] and rope. People could travel short distances[3] in these boats, or could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars[4] to move and control the direction. The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

1. طريق سريع 2. ورق البردي 3. مسافات 4. مجاديف



1 Listen and complete:

1. The first .... train was in Wales.
2. The train made trips .... and safer.
3. The invention of the steam engine changed ....
4. Ships with steam engines could travel much ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

cheap - like - transportation - faster

Adel : What's your favourite means of .... (1) .... ?

Amr : The subway.

Adel : Why do you .... (2) .... it?

Amr : Because it is .... (3) .... and safer.

Adel : Is it .... (4) .... ?

Amr : Yes, it is cheap.

3 Read and match:

1	The first car that ran on	a	use wagons and carts in the past.
2	Humans watched birds and	b	gasoline appeared in the 1800s.
3	People started to	c	greener airplanes and ships.
4	Engineers are designing	d	wanted to fly through the skies.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

4 Choose the correct word.

1. We are able to (send - receive - come - go) people to the Moon in rockets.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

2 The invention of the (boiled - steam - heated - grilled) engine changed transportation.
3 (Teachers - Engineers - Doctors - Bakers) are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.
4 In (urban - modern - rural - new) areas, many people still use old means of transportation.
5 There are electric buses that use (sun - solar - moon - sky) energy.
6 Humans began to use animals like (mules - tigers - monkeys - elephants) for transportation.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, they used animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then, they used small boats. Once the wheel was invented, people started to use wagons and carts. The steam engine made a big change in transportation. Ships and trains could travel faster.

Then, the car was invented and people started to buy it. The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer.
1 People started to use wagons and carts when the (bike - car - wheel - rocket) was invented.
2 Ships and trains could travel (slow - far - faster - slower).
3 People used small (cars - planes - canoes - trains) on water.

B) Answer the following questions.
4 What animals did they use for transportation?
....
5 What is the problem with transportation that uses gasoline?
....
6 When did people start to use wagons and carts?
....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 steam - The - train - was - first - Wales - in - .

2 developing - forms - new - People - are - transportation - of - .

3 could - markets - Farmers - goods - transport - to - their - .

4 London - in - The - subway - 1863 - in - opened - .

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Kinds of transportation"

Guiding words:

mules - canoe - steam train - faster - subway

8 Punctuate the following sentence.

the train made the trips faster and safer

WRITING

Lesson (4)

Definitions

roof	the top part of a building	سطح
canal	a long area of water, made for boats to travel on	قناة
water vapor	water in the form of gas	بخار الماء
waterway	the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake	ممر مائي / مجرى مائي

Extra vocabulary

electricity	كهرباء	hydrogen gas	غاز الهيدروجين
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	nuclear	نووي
ferry	عبّارة (معدية)	system	نظام
electric energy	طاقة كهربائية	dangerous	خطير
electric cab	سيارة أجرة كهربائية	warm air	هواء دافئ
wind power	طاقة الرياح	driverless	بدون سائق
electric vehicles	مركبات كهربائية	routes	طرق
dangerous gases	غازات خطيرة	water vapor	بخار الماء
historic	تاريخي	environment	البيئة
ecological	بيئي	personally	بصفة شخصية

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



Unit (11) Lesson (4)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
locate	يقع (للمكان)	located
generate	يولّد	generated
believe	يعتقد	believed
produce	ينتج	produced
carry	يحمل	carried
provide	يمد - يزود بـ	provided
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
come	يأتي	came
go	يذهب	went
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought
burn	يحرق / يحترق	burned / burnt
build	يبني	built
ride	يركب	rode
give	يعطي	gave

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

is located on	تقع على	come from	يأتي من
solar energy farm	محطة طاقة شمسية	up and down	ذهابا وإيابا
provide shade	يمد بالظل	get around	يدور حول
go for walks	يتمشى	important for	مهم لـ
generate electricity	يولد كهرباء	along the river	بطول النهر
better for the environment	أفضل للبيئة	a plan for	خطة لـ

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.

My Ideal City:

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe[1] that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion[2], solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

Water Transportation:

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. Personally, I think[3] it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.

Land Transportation:

All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that[4] the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know[5], hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor.

You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths. They go along the river and everywhere else in my city.

1. أعتقد 2. في رأيي 3. شخصيًا، أعتقد 4. متأكد أن 5. مما أعرف

Answer the following questions.

1) Where is your city located? ....

2) Where does electricity in your city come from? ....

Choose the correct answer.

3) The city mostly uses (unclear - solar - wind - sun) energy.

4) All transportation is now more (logical - illegal - ecological - biological).

Unit (11) Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

A Historic City / My Green City

by Hana

My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast[1]. There are houses and apartments[2], schools, two museums, and a hospital. There are a lot of green spaces where people can go for walks, ride their bikes, and enjoy being in nature[3]. Personally, I think that green spaces are the most important part of a city. There are also large trees in all the streets to provide shade.

Clean Energy / Green Electricity

Most of the electricity for the city comes from a wind farm on the coats. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that generate electricity[4]. Many buildings have solar panels. In my opinion, all buildings should have solar panels on their roofs. I am sure that people will stop using fossil fuels[5] soon because renewable energy[6] is cleaner.

Transportation for Goods and People / The Cleanest Form of Transportation

There is a system of canals in my city with bike next to them. I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more bike paths. The canals provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide transportation. Electric canal boats carry goods[7] across the city, so there are fewer trucks on the road. The residents[8] travel around the city on electric buses, streetcars, and cabs. All the transportation is electric so there is less pollution and the streets are quieter and cleaner.

1. ساحل
2. شقق
3. طبيعة
4. يولد كهرباء
5. وقود حفري
6. طاقة متجددة
7. بضائع
8. سكان

"Expressions for giving your opinion"

- I believe that.
- In my opinion.
- Personally, I think
- I am sure that
- From what I know.

Writing tip!

When you write a heading, you use capital letters for the important words. You don't have to use capital letters for conjunctions (and, so, but), articles (the, a, an), or prepositions (to, on, in, into, for).

Write a plan for your ideal city

You may cover the following.

- Describe your ideal city.
- Explain the transportation and how it is better for the environment.
- Use expressions for giving your opinion.
- Write a heading for each paragraph.

Model

My Ideal City

My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are houses and apartments, schools, a museum and a hospital. I am sure that all transportation here is ecological, ferries, canals and bikes. From what I know electric canal boats carry goods across the city. Personally I think it's an exciting place to live.

Help your child write about his ideal city.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن مدينته النموذجية

Exercises

1 Read and match:

1 Canal
2 Roof
3 Water vapor
4 Waterway

a the top part of a building
b a long area of water for boats
c routes for traveling by water
d water in the form of gas

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

2 Choose the correct word.

1 My city is located (in - at - on - with) the Nile River.
2 I believe (that - the - then - now) parks are important for everyone.
3 (Person - Personal - Personally - Slowly), I think it is very important to protect our waterways.
4 Some vehicles don't have any drivers because they are (careless - driverless - useless - hopeless).
5 Buses that use hydrogen produce (cool - cold - warm - hot) air.
6 Solar energy is (good - better - best - bad) than burning fossil fuels.
7 The wind farm has 12 wind turbines that (build - play - waste - generate) electricity.
8 The city mostly uses (nuclear - solar - green - moon) energy from the sun.
9 The electric buses produce (hydrogen gas - warm air - fossil fuels - oxygen).
10 Boats that use gasoline are (louder - quieter - calmer - slower) than boats that use electricity.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 city - The - energy - green - uses - .

....

2 buses - vapor - produce - The - water - new - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

3 important - everyone - Parks - for - are - .

....

4 the - do - What - canals - provide - ?

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs, too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 People can go for walks in (hospitals - parks - schools - banks).

2 Fossil fuels are (good - bad - better - nice) for the environment.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Where is your city?

....

4 Where do people put solar panels?

....

Lessons (5&6)

TRANSPORTATION AROUND THE WORLD - PROJECT

Key vocabulary Listen and repeat.



a cab
سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)



a car
سيارة



a ferry
عبّارة



an airplane
طائرة

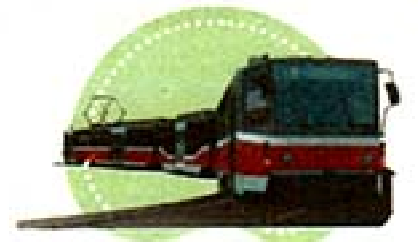
Transportation around the world
وسائل المواصلات حول العالم



a train
قطار



a boat
قارب



a streetcar
الترام



a subway
مترو



a bike
دراجة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Extra Vocabulary



The Netherlands
هولندا



The United States
الولايات المتحدة



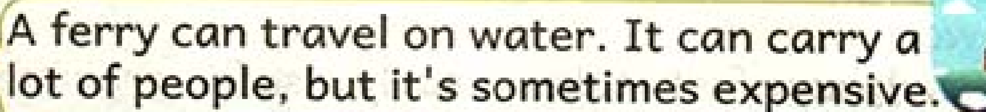
Bangladesh
بنجلاديش

advantages	مزايا	playground	ملعب
disadvantages	عيوب	mountains	جبال
countries	دول	host	مضيف
classmates	زملاء الفصل	guest	ضيف
task	مهمة	snow	جليد / تمطر ثلجًا

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get to	يصل إلى
get wet	يبتل
stay warm	يظل دافئًا
plan for	يخطط لـ
on the way to	في الطريق إلى
a radio show about	عرض إذاعي عن

Read and say.







A subway can travel on rails. It goes underground. It uses electricity. It's fast and green. It's cheap.

Exercises

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

leave - get - by - subway

Safia : Hi, Anas! How do you .... (1) .... to school?

Anas : Hello, Safia! I get to school ...... (2) .... bus.

Safia : When do you .... (3) .... home?

Anas : At 7 o'clock. What about you?

Safia : I take the .... (4) ....

2 Choose the correct word.

1. In Egypt, most people take the (metro - rocket - ship - boat) to work.
2. In Netherlands most people ride (mules - bikes - elephants - monkeys) to their work.
3. When it rains, I get (dry - clean - wet - hot).
4. He gets exercise (in - on - at - by) the way to school.
5. You can use a (car - rocket - ferry - bus) to travel on water.
6. Airplanes are the (fast - fastest - faster - good) means of transportation.

3 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"How to get to school"

Guiding words:

subway - fast - takes - early - safe - greener

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Review on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

transportation	النقل و المواصلات	destination	وجهة الوصول
airplane	طائرة	ferry	عبّارة / معدية
cab	سيارة أجرة	mule	بغل
canal	قناة	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
canoe	زورق	on time	في الوقت المحدد
rocket	صاروخ	steam train	قطار بخاري
streetcar	ترام	subway	مترو الأنفاق
traffic	المرور	traffic lights	إشارات المرور
traffic jam	ازدحام مروري	trip	رحلة
wagon	عربة نقل	walking	المشي
waterway	ممر مائي	bike path	مسار للدراجات
green spaces	مساحات خضراء	garbage	قمامة
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling bins	صناديق إعادة التدوير
reduce	يقلل	residents	السكان
reuse	يعيد استخدام	roof	سطح
trash	قمامة	volunteer	متطوع - يتطوع
water vapor	بخار الماء	highway	طريق سريع



Comparative Adjectives



adj. الصفة + er + than

e.g. The forest is greener than the desert.

Longadjectives

more / less + adj. الصفة + than

e.g. Gold is more expensive than silver.

Superlative Adjectives



the + adj. الصفة + est

e.g. The Nile is the longest river in the world.



the most / the least + adj. الصفة

e.g. This is the most interesting film.



- **un = not:** **e.g.** Kareema is unhappy.
- **dis = not:** **e.g.** I dislike playing tennis, but I like football.
- **re = again:** **e.g. You can** recycle old things.



Writing Corner

"Cities nowadays"

I love my city very much, but traffic became a big problem. Every morning I have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour. We have good public transportation, but the buses don't always go to the destination you want.

"A cleaner urban environment"

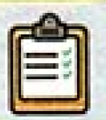
To have a cleaner urban environment, you should have many things. You should have green spaces to have clean air. You should have bike paths to reduce pollution. The residents should help by using recycling bins. We should recycle water to water the green spaces.

"Transportation in the past"

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys and horses.
Then came small boats like canoes. When people invented the wheel, they started to use wagons and carts. The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. It became easier and faster.

"Ideal city"

My city is located on the Red Sea. There are beautiful homes, schools, and a hospital. There is a clean park. I believe that parks are very important for us. We get electricity from a solar energy farm in the desert. In my opinion, solar energy is better for the environment. I go to school by bike. It is a good way to protect the environment.



Activities on Unit (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. I'm (sometimes - usually - always - never) on time for school.
2. I always get (into - out - away - of) a traffic jam.
3. The trip to school takes (fifteen - thirty - fifty - sixty) minutes.
4. The traffic light color for "Go" is (red - yellow - green - gray).

2 Listen and complete:

1. Farmers used to transport their .... in wagons and carts.
2. The first .... train opened in London in 1863.
3. Ships with .... engines could travel faster than sail boats.
4. Today airplanes can fly to different .... in one day.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

walks - located - spaces - coast

Heba : Do you live in a village or a city, Nermeen?
Nermeen : I live in a city.
Heba : Where is your city .... (1) ....?
Nermeen : It's located on the Red Sea .... (2) ....
Heba : Do you have green .... (3) ....?
Nermeen : Yes, we do.
Heba : What can people do there?
Nermeen : They can go for .... (4) ...., ride their bikes, and enjoy being in the nature.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The River Nile was the most important highway in ancient Egypt. All the major cities were along the River Nile. That's why the



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Egyptians traveled mostly along the river.

The Egyptians built boats and ships to use them to travel on the Nile. They built small, simple boats from papyrus and rope. People used these boats for fishing or traveling short distances. They used oars to make the boats move.

The Egyptians built larger boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 The major (cities - villages - towns - streets) were along the River Nile.

2 They built boats and ships to travel on the (Lake - Canal - Nile - Sea).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Why did the Egyptians travel along the Nile?

....

4 What did the Egyptians use to make the boats move?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 Grandma volunteered to help. ( )

2 Grandma sew some clothes for the boys. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 Waleed went to his (mum's - dad's - grandma's - grandpa's) grocery store.

4 Anissa's dad works at the (market - school - beach - shop).



6 Choose the correct word.

1. What is the (cheap - cheaper - cheapest - more cheap) form of renewable energy?
2. A gold medal is (good - better - worst - best) than a silver medal.
3. Solar energy is (more - most - much - least) ecological than fossil fuels.
4. Benban Solar Park in Egypt is the (large - larger - largest - most) park in Africa.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. cities - Which - a subway - have - Egypt - in - ?

....

2. oars - move - the boats - They - to - used - make - .

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

"A plan for your ideal city"

Guiding elements:

1- Where is it located?
2- What places are there?
3- How do you get electricity?
4- What kinds of transportation are there?

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



A Global Challenge

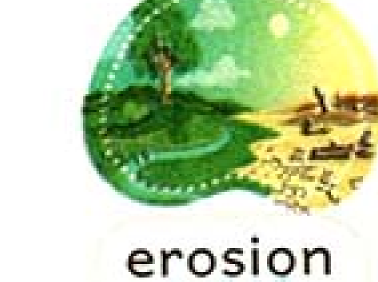
In this unit students will ...

- learn about geology and climate change.
- review the first conditional.
- read a newspaper report about how nations are working together to slow climate change.
- write a newspaper report about what causes climate change.
- listen to a talk about food supplies around the world.
- perform a role play about shopping responsibly.
- plan a plant-based meal.

Lesson (1)

ROCKS AND STONES

Key vocabulary Listen and repeat.



erosion
تآكل التربة



flood
فيضان



landslide
انهيار - انزلاق التربة







drought
جفاف



tsunami
تسونامي (موجة البحر الهائلة)



water shortage
نقص المياه



glacier
نهر جليدي

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Extra Vocabulary

natural process	عملية طبيعية	heavy rains	أمطار غزيرة
limestone	حجر جيري	humans	البشر
flow	تدفق - جريان	agriculture	الزراعة
currents	التيارات المائية	fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
riverbank	ضفة النهر	climate change	تغير المناخ
sea level	مستوى سطح البحر	marble	رخام
geological	جيولوجي	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	mountains	جبال
acid rain	مطر حمضي	soil	تربة (زراعية)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
erode	يتفتت/ يتآكل	eroded
cause	يسبب	caused
burn	يحرق	burned - burnt
explode	ينفجر	exploded
damage	يدمر	damaged
flow	يتدفق	flowed
affect	يؤثر على	affected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يجعل	made
become	يصبح	became
rise	يرتفع	rose
hold	يمسك	held
feed	يطعم	fed
grow	يزرع	grew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move from... to ...	ينتقل من ... إلى...	made of	مصنوع من
result in	يتسبب في	a piece of	قطعة من
for a long time	لوقت طويل	mix with	يختلط بـ
slow down	يُبطئ	in danger	في خطر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Unit (12) Lesson (1)

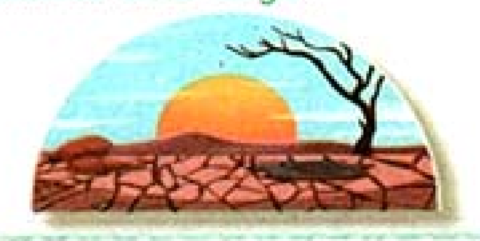
Listen and read.

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types[1] of flows- floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers- also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this.

Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.



Drought happens[2] where there is not enough[3] rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger[4]. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

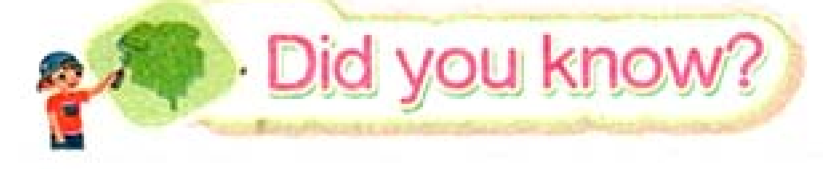


1- أنواع مختلفة 2- يحدث 3- كافٍ 4- خطر

Answer the following questions.

1) What is erosion? ....

2) When does a drought happen? ....



Nearly 71% of the surface of the earth is water. About 95% of all the water is salt water.



The Sphinx is made of a large piece of a type of stone called limestone (حجر الجير). Acid rain damages limestone and another stone called marble (رخام). So, acid rain can also damage the Sphinx.

Listen and read.



When heavy rain or strong winds move soil and rocks from one place to another, it creates erosion.
Human activity such as heavy agriculture can also create this.
During a drought, there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a water shortage. This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals.
Too much rain in one area can cause a flood. When too much rain falls on hills and mountains and there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can also be a landslide. This is when the soil and rocks move and fall away.





1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

rain - farmers - drought - dry

Omar : We are going to learn about .... (1) ....
Mazen : What does it mean?
Omar : It means there isn't .... (2) .... for a long time.
Mazen : What happens to rivers and lakes?
Omar : They become .... (3) ....
Mazen : So, ... (4) ...... can't grow food.

2 Read and match.

1 When it doesn't rain for a long time,
2 When rock or soil is moved,
3 Heavy rain or winds
4 There's a water shortage

a can cause erosion.
b when people don't have enough water.
c there is sometimes a drought.
d we call it erosion.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

3 Choose the correct word.

1 Erosion is a/an (good - natural - artificial- important) process.
2 Drought happens when we don't have (rain - rocks - stones - sand) for a long time.
3 The waves and currents in the sea can (burn - erode - grow - draw) beaches.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Heavy (culture - agriculture - nature - future) can cause erosion.

5 Climate change causes sea levels to (rise - need - burn - hide).

6 There's a water (age - shortage - page - edge) when people don't have enough water.

7 The Sphinx is made of (wood - glass - limestone - leather).

8 We should slow (up - down - in - at) erosion.

9 When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called (flood - drought - tsunami - landslide).

10 A (glacier - drought - flood - erosion) is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.

11 The (landslide - air - atmosphere - flood) is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases.

12 When chemicals from air pollution mix with water and sunlight, it creates (rain - flood - tsunami - acid rain).

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 can - erosion - Humans - cause - .

....

2 causes - Burning - change - fossil fuels - climate - .

....

3 don't - water - enough - We - have - .

....

4 Sphinx - made - The - is - limestone - of - .

....

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there's a water shortage.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. (Landslide - Tsunami - Drought - Glacier) happens when there is not enough rain for a long time.
2. During a drought, rivers and lakes become (hot - dry - cold - cool) .

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When does a water shortage happen?

....

4. What happens to farmers during a drought?

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Erosion"

Guiding words:

(natural - rock - soil - move - waves - humans)

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

how do humans affect erosion

....



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



LANGUAGE

The Future Simple Tense

Form:

Sub. + will + inf.

e.g.
- The drought will cause a water shortage.
- It will rain tomorrow.

Usage:

We use the future simple to talk about "future predictions"

يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتحدث عن التنبوات المستقبلية.

Keywords:

tomorrow غدًا	soon قريبًا	in the future في المستقبل
next (week - Friday - summer - year) القادم		
in + (a future period) (2030 - 2050) في (أي عام قادم)		

Negative:

Sub. + will + not + inf.

e.g.
- We will not burn fossil fuels.
- It won't rain tomorrow.



will not = won't

Help your child identify the future simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن المستقبل البسيط

Yes / No question:

Will + sub. + inf. ....?

e.g. Will you go shopping tomorrow?
Yes, I will. No, I won't.



1 He played tennis yesterday. (tomorrow)
⇨ He will play tennis tomorrow.
2 They will use electric vehicles. (not)
⇨ They won't use electric vehicles.
3 Yes, Malak will visit the desert. (Will....?)
⇨ Will Malak visit the desert?
4 I go to the beach every Friday. (next Friday)
⇨ I will go to the beach next Friday.

Choose the correct word.

1 (Did - Is - Will - Are) you go shopping tomorrow?
2 Malak (visit - visits - visiting - will visit) her aunt next week.
3 We (are - have - won't - is) burn fossil fuels.
4 Mazen will (play - plays - played - playing) football tomorrow.
5 I will go to the zoo (tomorrow - yesterday - last week - now).

Help your child identify the future simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن المستقبل البسيط

"If" (First Conditional) (إذا - لو) الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form

1. If + sub. + present simple, sub. + will + inf.

⇨ **Note: the use of the comma**

e.g. If we use electric vehicles, we will help the environment.

2. Sub. + will + inf. + if + sub. + present simple

⇨ **Note: No comma here**

e.g. We will help the environment if we use electric cars.

Usage

We use the first conditional to talk about something that is possible in the future. تعبر عن شيء محتمل الحدوث في المستقبل:

e.g. If it rains, there will be a flood.



Rewrite Corner

1 If she cares bout the environment, she won't use plastic bags. (if)
⇨ She won't use plastic bags if she cares about the environment.

2 There will be a flood if it rains. (If)
⇨ If it rains, there will be a flood.

3 If our cities have more bike paths, people will exercise more. (our city)
⇨ If our city has more bike paths, people will exercise more.

4 They will be happy if they win the match. (not)
⇨ They won't be happy if they don't win the match.

5 I won't help the environment if I use fossil fuels. (If)
⇨ If I use fossil fuels, I won't help the environment.

1 Choose the correct word.

1 I will (buys - buy - buying - bought) an electric car.
2 If she (use - uses - used - using) fossil fuels, she won't help the environment.
3 (Are - Have - Will - Do) you go shopping tomorrow?
4 I (help - will help - helps - helping) the environment if I use solar panels on my roof.
5 Tarek will buy an electric car if he (save - saves - will save - saved) enough money.
6 If I run, I (catch - catches - will catch - catching) the bus.
7 If Mona has shorter showers, she (save - will save - saves - saved) a lot of water.
8 If it (didn't - don't - can't - doesn't) rain soon, we will have a water shortage.

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 If Tarek buys an electric car, he will help the environment. (if)

....

2 No, he won't burn fossil fuels. (Will...?)

....

3 He will make his own electricity if he puts solar panels on his roof. (They)

....

4 We will go to the zoo. (not)

....

5 Malak will visit her aunt if she has more time. (If)

....





1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

won't - if - will - electricity

Asmaa : What will you do .... (1) .... you want to help the environment?

Jana : I .... (2)............ burn fossil fuels.

Asmaa : What else will you do?

Jana : I .... (3) .... put solar panels on my roof.

Asmaa : Why?

Jana : To make my own .... (4) .... and help the environment.

2 Choose the correct word.

1. He (help - helps - will help - helping) his sister if she needs help.
2. I (don't - won't - haven't - am not) go to school tomorrow.
3. Adel will (play - plays - playing - played) football next Friday.
4. (Does - Is - Will - Has) Malak visit the desert next holiday?
5. If the polar ice caps melt, sea levels (rise - rises - will rise - rising).
6. They will travel (yesterday - tomorrow - last week- always).
7. If it (rain - rains - raining - rained), there will be a flood.
8. If we (use - uses - used - using) ecofriendly energies, our cities will be cleaner.
9. We (save - saves - will save - saved) the planet if we recycle old things.
10. I won't (use - uses - using - used) fossil fuels.

11 If Mazen studies hard, he (will - do - has - would) succeed.

12 If you plant trees, you will (helps - help - helping - helped) the environment.

13 We will (goes - go - going - went) to the park next week.

3 Read and match.

1 If we use electric vehicles, a he will save money.

2 Will you go shopping? b he cares about the environment.

3 If he uses solar energy, c our cities will be cleaner.

4 He will buy an electric car if d Yes, I will.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 rain - tomorrow - It - will - .

....

2 will - Malak - the - visit - desert - .

....

3 you - newspapers - these - Will - recycle - old - ?

....

4 will - I - environment - the - help - .

....

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

will we go to the science museum

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (3)

NATIONS WORKING TOGETHER

Vocabulary

document	وثيقة	several	عديد - كثير	complicated	مُعقّد
planet	كوكب	goals	أهداف	companies	شركات
nations	أمم	headline	عنوان رئيسي	together	معًا
newspaper	جريدة	leaders	زعماء - قادة	immediately	في الحال
agreement	اتفاقية	meeting	اجتماع	reporter	صحفي
lead-in	افتتاحية / تقديم	global	عالمي	serious effort	جهد كبير
topic	موضوع	caption	تعليق على الصورة	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
coal	الفحم	report	تقرير	international	عالمي / دولي
greenhouse gases			غازات مسببة للاحتباس الحراري		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
summarize	يلخص	summarized	reduce	يقلل	reduced
define	يحدد - يعرف	defined	meet	يقابل	met
create	يخلق - يكوّن - ينشئ	created	become	يصبح	became

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in fact	في الواقع (الحقيقة)	one way	طريق ذو اتجاه واحد	make a plan	يخطط
agree to	يوافق أن	decide to	يقرر أن	at home	بالمنزل

Definitions

conference	a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic مؤتمر
pact	a formal agreement between two people or groups of people ميثاق
party	a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs حزب
treaty	a formal written agreement between two or more countries معاهدة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Lesson (3)

the lead-in	this is one or two sentences that summarize the report افتتاحية
the headline	this is the title of the report العنوان الرئيسي
the body of the report	this is the long part you read موضوع التقرير
a caption	this is a description of a picture تعليق على صورة

Parts of the newspaper report
أجزاء التقرير الصحفي

1- The name of the newspaper
اسم الجريدة

2- The headline
العنوان الرئيسي

3- The reporter's name
اسم الصحفي

4- The lead- in
افتتاحية / تقديم

5- A picture
صورة

6- The body of the report
موضوع التقرير

7- A caption
تعليق على صورة

Conjunctions الروابط

and و — or أو — so لذلك — but و لكن

- and (و) ⇨ is used to connect two similar ideas.
تستخدم لربط فكرتين متشابهتين.

e.g. My family recycles paper **and** glass.

- or (أو) ⇨ is used to express choices.
تستخدم لتوضح الخيارات المتاحة أو الممكنة.

e.g. Do they use solar energy **or** do they burn coal?

Help your child identify the parts of the newspaper and conjunctions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أجزاء التقرير الصحفي و الروابط.

- So (لذلك) ⇨ is used to connect a (cause/ reason) to its result.
تستخدم لربط سبب ما بنتيجته.

e.g. My dad was at the conference so he is really tired.

- but (ولكن) ⇨ is used to connect two different or contrasting ideas.
تستخدم لربط فكرتين مختلفتين أو متناقضتين.

e.g. The leaders went to a conference, but they didn't sign a treaty.

1 Choose the correct word.

1. The leaders had a conference, (and - but - or - so) they couldn't agree to anything.
2. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution (so - and - but- or) plastic waste.
3. We need to stop pollution now (or - and - but- so) it will be late.
4. All countries must reduce air pollution (and - but - or - so) water pollution.
5. I went to the meeting, (and - but - so - or) I didn't find anyone.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

and - but - or - so

1. Do they use coal .... solar energy?
2. I like English .... Arabic.
3. I went to school, ... no one came.
4. I ran quickly .... I caught the bus.

Did you know?

The foundation Youth Love Egypt (YLE) has planted thousands of trees along the Nile and canals.

قامت مؤسسة (شباب يحب مصر) بزراعة الآف الأشجار على طول نهر النيل والترع.

Listen and read.

Global Climate News

Nations Work Together to slow Climate Change

by Dareen Shabrawi



Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together.

Nations are now making plans to work on this problem.

If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do?



Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference (called COP26) in Glasgow, Scotland. They talked about what they can do to slow climate change, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

Another important meeting was COP25 in Madrid, Spain in 2019.

Greta Thunberg, a teenager from Sweden, asked leaders to do more to slow climate change. After that, Thunberg became famous all over the world.

This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document: the Glasgow Climate Pact. In this new pact, countries agreed to do several things. First, they decided to continue with the Paris Agreement. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.

Another important topic at the meeting was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric vehicles.

We must all slow climate change. Treaties like the Paris Agreement are one way for nations to work together to do this.

Help your child read the text. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

caption - What - parts - name

Dalia : How many ....(1)...................... does a newspaper report have?

Mona : A newspaper report has seven parts .

Dalia : ....(2)..are they?

Mona : The reporter's ....(3)...................., the lead-in, the headline and a picture.

Dalia : What else?

Mona : The body of the report, the newspaper's name and a ....(4)......................

2 Read and match.

1 Climate change affects	a can slow climate change.
2 Nations are making	b everyone living on our planet.
3 If we all help, we	c stop using fossil fuels.
4 The government decided to	d plans to work on this problem.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

3 Choose the correct word.

1. When we burn fossil fuels, it is (good - bad - important- helpful) for the environment.
2. All countries must reduce air pollution (but - so - and- or) water pollution.
3. The leaders had a conference, (or - so - but- and) they couldn't agree to anything.
4. The (lead-in - reporter's name - caption- headline) is a short description of a picture.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة.

5. The (headline - reporter's name - body of the report- picture) is the person who wrote the report.
6. Do you use solar energy (but - or - so- because) coal?
7. Sara was ill (but - so - and- or) she didn't go to school.
8. The long part you read in a newspaper report is called the (body - headline - caption- picture).
9. One or two sentences that summarize the report is/are called the (headline - lead-in - body- caption).
10. The leaders went to the conference (and - or - but- so) they didn't sign a treaty.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nations work together to slow climate change. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do?
Last week, leaders from every country in the world met in Glasgow, Scotland. They decided to stop using coal.

Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.
Another important topic was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric cars. We must all slow climate change.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Climate (change - chance - chase- charger) is a dangerous problem.
2. We must (show - share - slow- draw) climate change.
3. We can recycle plastic and (class - glass - gas - plant).

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How much pollution can burning coal create?

....

5. Where did the leaders meet?

....



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. change - is - Climate - problem - a dangerous - .

....

2. very - It's - to - important - recycle- .

....

3. agreement - is - a formal - A pact - .

....

4. must - People - stop - fossil - using - fuels - .

....

5. change - What - causes - climate - ?

....

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

treaty - party- pact- conference

1. A ....(1)........... is a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic.
2. A ....(2)........... is a formal agreement between two people or groups of people.
3. A ....(3)........... is a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs.
4. A ....(4)........... is a formal written agreement between two or more countries.

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

the leaders had a conference last week

....

WRITING

Lesson (4)

A newspaper report

Main Vocabulary

emergency	الطوارئ	replace	يستبدل	in fact	في الواقع
keep...clean	يحافظ على النظافة	imagine	يتخيل	useful	مفيد - نافع
for example	على سبيل المثال	daily	يومي	gasoline	بنزين - غازولين
international	عالمي	discuss	يناقش	news	أخبار
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	opinion	رأي		



When we write a newspaper report, we use facts and not opinions.
تذكر أننا عند كتابة خبر أو تقرير صحفي في جريدة نكتب (حقائق) فقط ولا نكتب آراء.

Writing tip! 2

You can use these useful phrases when you write a newspaper report:

- In fact, it was their 26th meeting.
- For example, the parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius.

Different opinions about newspaper reports

Your headline is very good.





The body of your report is quite short.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

A newspaper report model



name of newspaper:

GLOBAL NEWS

headline: WORLD LEADERS MEET IN CAIRO FOR CONFERENCE

by: Allam El-Saeed

lead-in: Deforestation is a global emergency. The world's leaders must act quickly to replace the world's forests.

picture:

caption: Deforestation in the Amazon

body: The world's leaders met today at a conference in Cairo to discuss the growing problem of deforestation. More than 25 leaders signed a treaty agreeing to plant billions of trees over the next five years.

Help your child know how to write a newspaper report.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيفية كتابة تقرير صحفي.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete.

1. The Suez Canal .... the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.
2. It's the .... important canal in the world.
3. Many .... go through the Suez Canal.
4. The ships travel to many .... all over the world.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a global - Deforestation - is - emergency - .

....

2. newspaper - the - report - Who - wrote - ?

....

3. must - the - We - clean - keep - air - .

....

4. need - we - Why - do - trees - more - ?

....

3 Write a newspaper report about "what causes climate change and how people work together to stop climate change".

name of newspaper:

headline:

by:

lead-in:

picture:

caption:

body:

Lessons (5&6)

- THE FOOD WE EAT
- PROJECT

Key vocabulary

Listen and repeat.



lentils
عدس



beef
لحم بقري



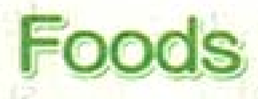
rice
أرز



koshari
كشري



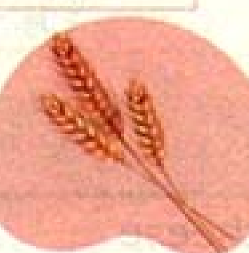
cheese
جبن



Foods
أطعمة



ketchup
كاتشب



wheat
قمح



burger
برجر



chickpeas / hummus
حمص



falafel
فلافل (طعمية)

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary

favorite	مفضل / محبوب	food supplies	مؤن الطعام
conversation	محادثة	shopping list	قائمة تسوق
dishes	أطباق - أكلات	ingredients	مكونات
an appetizer	طبق فاتح للشهية	main course	الطبق الرئيسي
dessert	الحلو (بعد الأكل)	menu	قائمة طعام
plant-based meal	وجبة مكوناتها الرئيسية النباتات	drinks	مشروبات

Study the following.

Foods from plants					
spaghetti	إسباجتي	rice	أرز	crisps	مقرمشات
French fries	بطاطس مقلية	pasta	مكرونة	lentils	عدس
ketchup	كاتشب	falafel	فلافل	spices	توابل
oat milk	شوفان بالحليب	bread	خبز	chickpeas / hummus	حمص
popcorn	فشار	garlic	ثوم	olive oil	زيت زيتون

Foods from animals					
yogurt	زبادي	meat balls	كرات اللحم	cheese	جبن
milk	لبن	honey	عسل النحل	meat	لحم
beef	لحم بقري	butter	زبدة	burger	برجر
omelette	الأومليت / عجة البيض	eggs	بيض	chicken	دجاج



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

ingredients - meal - koshari - chickpeas

Anas : What's your favorite dish?
Seif : I like .... (1) .... very much.
Anas : What are the .... (2) .... of koshari?
Seif : Rice, pasta, lentils, onions and .... (3) ....
Anas : Is it a useful dish?
Seif : Yes, it is.
Anas : What kind of food is it?
Seif : It is a plant-based .... (4) ....

2 Choose the correct word.

1. There is no meat in (beef - burger - koshari - steak).
2. A/An (drink - dessert - appetizer - main course) is a small dish that you eat at the beginning of a meal.
3. What's your favorite (spoon - dish - fork - knife)? Koshari.
4. My mom bought the (cheese - ingredients - form - recipe) for koshari from the supermarket.
5. Umm Ali is my favorite (dessert - animal - book - food).

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ingredients - koshari - based - wheat

1. Mom is making .... for Nagwa to eat this evening.
2. The bread is made from ....
3. Mom buys the .... for koshari from the supermarket.
4. Koshari is a plant- .... meal.

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Last week I went to a famous restaurant with my friends. We all wanted to eat our favorite meals. I like koshari because it is a plant-based meal. The ingredients of koshari are rice, macaroni, lentils and chickpeas. My friend Anas likes burger very much because it comes from meat. My friend Seif likes pizza because it comes from wheat. My friend Safia likes fish because it is healthy. After the meal we had a dessert and drank juice. We had a wonderful time there.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. I like (pizza - koshari - fish- steak) because it is a plant-based meal.
2. Anas likes burger because it comes from (wheat - beans - meat- milk).
3. After the meal we drank (milk - water - juice- coffee).

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did you go last week?

....

5. Why does Safia like fish?

....

5 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:



"Your favorite meal"

Guiding elements:

1- What is it?
2- What are the ingredients?
3- Who cooks it?
4- Where do you have it? With whom?

....
....
....
....
....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (12)

Vocabulary

water shortage	نقص المياه	rocks	صخور	lentils	عدس
climate change	تغير المناخ	drought	جفاف	wheat	قمح
for example	على سبيل المثال	treaty	معاهدة	leader	قائد / زعيم
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	youth	الشباب	stones	أحجار
newspaper report	تقرير صحفي	appetizer	طبق فاتح للشهية	flood	فيضان
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري	geology	علم الجيولوجيا	pact	ميثاق
agreement	اتفاقية	limestone	حجر جيري	marble	رخام
foundation	مؤسسة	document	وثيقة	habitat	موطن
ingredients	مكونات الطعام	acid rain	مطر حمضي	body	موضوع (التقرير)
main course	الطبق الرئيسي	process	عملية	in fact	في الواقع
agriculture	الزراعة	complicated	معقد	dish	طبق / أكلة
headline	عنوان رئيسي	diversity	تنوع - اختلاف	news	أخبار
dessert	الحلو (بعد الأكل)	caption	تعليق على صورة	global	عالمي
weather	الطقس	erosion	تآكل التربة / انجراف	glacier	نهر جليدي
food waste	مخلفات الطعام	lead-in	افتتاحية / تقديم	nations	أمم
tsunami	تسونامي (موجة البحر الهائلة)	landslide	انزلاق التربة	newspaper	جريدة
conference	مؤتمر	chickpeas	حمص	party	حزب





The Future Simple Tense

Form: Sub + will + inf.

e.g. The drought will cause a water shortage.

Usage: We use the future simple to talk about "future predictions".

Keywords:

tomorrow غدًا	soon قريبًا	in the future في المستقبل
next (week - Friday - summer - year) القادم		
in + (a future period) (2030 - 2050) في (أي عام قادم)		

Negative: Sub + will + not + inf.

e.g. We will not burn fossil fuels.

will not = won't



Form

1. If + sub. + present simple, sub. + will + inf.

e.g. If we use electric vehicles, we will help the environment.

2. Sub. + will + inf. + if + sub. + present simple

e.g. We will help the environment if we use electric vehicles.



"Erosion"

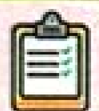
Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches and rivers can erode riverbanks. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this.

"Drought"

Drought happens where there isn't enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people don't have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

"Climate Change"

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together . If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic and glass at home, but what can nations do? Leaders from different countries from all over the world meet every year. They are trying to find solutions to this dangerous problem. In their last conference, they decided to stop using fossil fuels. In addition, car companies agreed to stop making cars that use fossil fuels by 2040.



Activities on Unit (12)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. (Drought - Erosion - Flood - Glacier) happens where there is not enough rain.
2. Farmers can't grow (clothes - food - stones - seeds) during the drought.
3. During the drought, rivers and lakes become (rain - hot - dry - wet).
4. When people don't have enough water. It is called (flood - drought - water shortage - tsunami).

2 Listen and complete.

1. Tarek wants to make his .... more ecofriendly.
2. Tarek uses electricity from solar ....
3. He will buy an .... car.
4. He will help the ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shade - environment - be - plant

We can help the ....(1)............ by planting more trees. If we ....(2)............ more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner. The streets will have ....(3)............ and the buildings will be cooler. They will ....(4)............ prettier, too.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do?

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 If we all help, we can (slow - increase - make - throw) climate change.

2 Paper and plastic can be (burnt - recycled - eaten - thrown) at home.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What will happen if we all help?

....

4 How could countries reduce global warming?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 Grandma volunteered to help Amir. (   )

2 Grandma sew some clothes for helping. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 The seagull had two (babies - adults - cousins - dads).

4 The friends are (sad - happy - worried - sorry) to help in the village.



Activities

6 Choose the correct word.

1 If it doesn't rain soon, we (have - will have - has - are having) a water shortage.
2 They can recycle paper (and - but - or - so) glass.
3 If the climate (get - got - gets - getting) hotter, there will be more droughts.
4 We need to stop pollution (or - and - so - but) it will be too late.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 burn - We - - fuels - won't - fossil - .

....

2 cars - help - Electric - will - the environment - .

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"How to help the environment"

Guiding words:

coal - fossil fuel - electric cars - recycle - plant trees

....

....

....

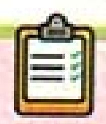
....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Review on Units (10,11,12)



1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

How - monuments - science - see

Dina : Where did you go yesterday?

Talia : I went to the .... (1) .... museum.

Dina : Oh! It's fantastic. .... (2) .... did you go there?

Talia : I went by bus.

Dina : What did you .... (3) .... there?

Talia : I saw a lot of .... (4) ....

2 Choose the correct word.

1. A/An (blog - vlog - message - mail) is a special kind of website.
2. You (should - shouldn't - can't - mustn't) listen carefully to your teacher.
3. A (canal - roof - waterway - gate) is the top part of a building.
4. An electric car is (expensive - more expensive - most expensive - cheap) than a bike.
5. If it rains a lot, there (is - will be - are - was) a flood.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

currents - erode - Erosion - soil

..........(1).......... is a natural process. It happens when rock and ....(2).......... is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and ....(3).......... in the sea can ....(4).......... beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks.



Review (4)

4 Read and match.

1 A vlog is similar
2 Cities are exciting
3 I like English
4 Erosion is

a) places to live.
b) a natural process.
c) to a blog.
d) and math.

1- ( )   2- ( )   3- ( )   4- ( )

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Transportation is the way that people move from one place to another. It is also the way that people move things from one place to another. A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily. In rural areas, many people still use these means of transportation today.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were (cars - buses - trains - walking, running and swimming) .

2 Boats and canoes are types of (road - water - street - air) transportation.

B) Answer the following questions.

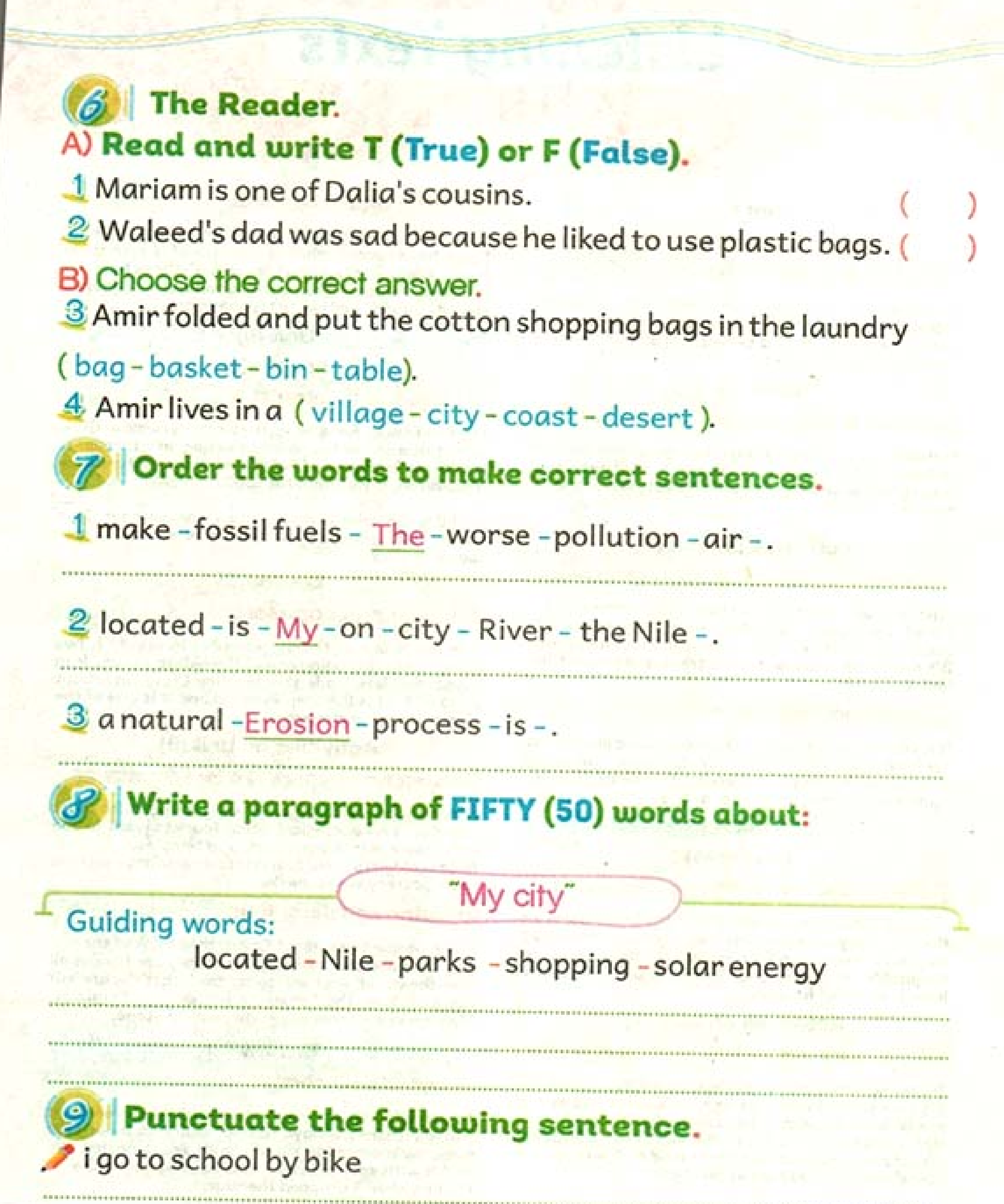
3 What kinds of animals did people use in transportation?

....

4 What do farmers transport to market in cities?

....





6 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins. ( )

2 Waleed's dad was sad because he liked to use plastic bags. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 Amir folded and put the cotton shopping bags in the laundry (bag - basket - bin - table).

4 Amir lives in a (village - city - coast - desert).

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 make - fossil fuels - The - worse - pollution - air - .

....

2 located - is - My - on - city - River - the Nile - .

....

3 a natural - Erosion - process - is - .

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"My city"

Guiding words:

located - Nile - parks - shopping - solar energy

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following sentence.

i go to school by bike

....

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lesson(1)

1) Listen and complete.

There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers in the rainforest. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains there and the temperature is hot.

Lesson(4)

1) Listen and complete.

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.

Activities on unit (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

What can our country do to help the environment?
I think our country can help by using more renewable energy. It would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. It's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.

2) Listen and complete.

It is very dry in the desert. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent, and they can be hot or cold.

Unit (8)

Lesson(4)

1) Listen and complete.

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food and meet friendly people. Egyptians are very hospitable and generous. Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food,too.

Activities on unit (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The spring festival of Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. We have picnics in the park with our families and we eat special food. We paint and decorate eggs. It's fun!
My favorite Egyptian dishes are the ones we eat at festivals! We eat a delicious meal called fatta at Eid Al-Adha and special cookies called Kahk at Eid Al-Fitr!

2) Listen and complete.

Long ago, the king asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. When he returned, he was frightened about what the king would say. His servant told him to tell the truth.

Unit (9)

Lesson(2)

1) Listen and complete.

Khufu is famous for building the Great Pyramid at Giza. The statue shows the pharaoh sitting on a throne. It is the smallest piece of Egyptian royal sculpture ever discovered. It was found in 1903.

He built the solar boat. It was a wooden boat. It is about 4600 years old. It's 42 meters long. It was found in Giza.

Lesson(3)

1) Listen and complete.

Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid,and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.

Activities on unit (9)

1) listen and circle the correct answer.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of its amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see large monuments,pyramids, and temples.
Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools,pottery,vases,maskes.

2) Listen and complete.

When people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptian built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it from one huge piece of stone.

Review (3)

1) Listen and complete.

In Ramadan we are having a meal in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! Last week my mom made kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I was helping her in the kitchen when I dropped the sugar!

2) Listen and complete.

The world needs lots of trees because they take carbon dioxide out of the air and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build homes or make farms, but it's important to plant more trees.

Unit (10)

Lesson(4)

1) Listen and complete.

1- I like English and Arabic.
2- I go to school in the morning.
3- I like football matches,but I don't play it.
4-I'd like to create an after-school writer's club.
5-I want to improve my writing skill.

Activities on unit (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm very tired today. Last night I played board games with my sister for an hour . Then I had dinner and I watched TV. After that I did my homework and I went to bed late. I went to school late too.

2) Listen and complete.

I love playing football. I really want to join the school team. They are choosing the team next month and I think they might choose me. My friends don't like football. They don't want me to play on the team.

Unit (11)

Lesson(3)

1) Listen and complete.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s.The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

Activities on unit (11)

1) listen and circle the correct answer.

There is a lot of traffic in my neighborhood. The trip to my school takes an hour. I always get into a traffic jam. The traffic lights colors for "Go" is green and " Stop" is red. I get up early so I am always on time for school.

2) Listen and complete.

In the past, people used animals and small boats for transportation. Farmers used to transport their goods in wagons and carts. Ships with steam engines could travel faster than sail boats.
The first subway train opened in London in 1863. Today airplanes can fly to different continents in one day.

Unit (12)

Lesson(4)

1) Listen and complete.

The Suez Canal links the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea. It's the most important canal in the world. Many ships go through the Suez Canal. The ships travel to many countries all over the world. Thousands of ships cross it every year.

Activities on unit (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

2) Listen and complete.

Tarek wants to make his house more ecofriendly. If Tarek uses electricity from solar energy, for example, he will save money. What will he do with all that extra money? Tarek will buy an electric car if he saves enough money. If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment.

AL-BAHER

Connect Plus

Final Revision

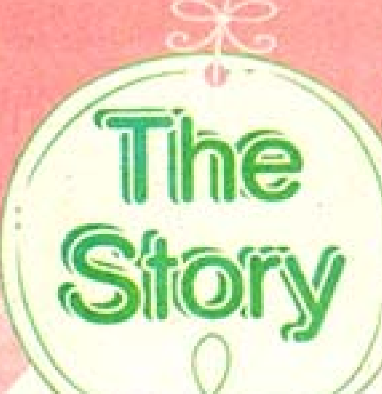


2023

4th Primary

Second Term

Parents' Guide



Amir takes action

BY SCOT ESPOSITO
ILLUSTRATED BY MIKE LACEY



AMIR TAKES ACTION

The Characters

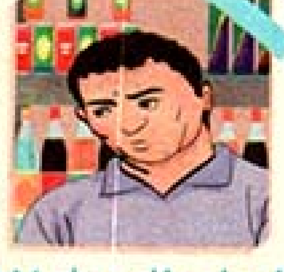

Grandma


Amir


The seagull


Anissa


Waleed


Waleed's dad


Dalia


The baby seagulls



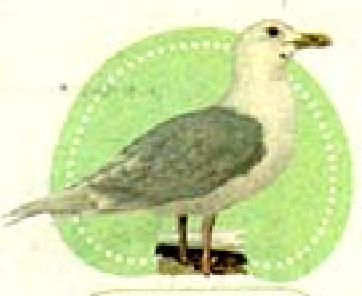
Help your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة

Key vocabulary Listen and repeat.



washing machine
غسالة



seagull
طائر النورس



laundry
غسيل



roof
سطح



cloth bag
حقائب قماش

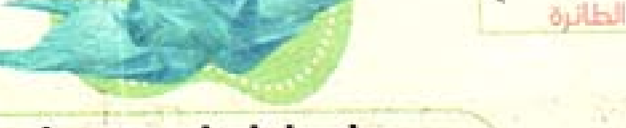


nest
عش الطيور



land
تهبط الطائرة

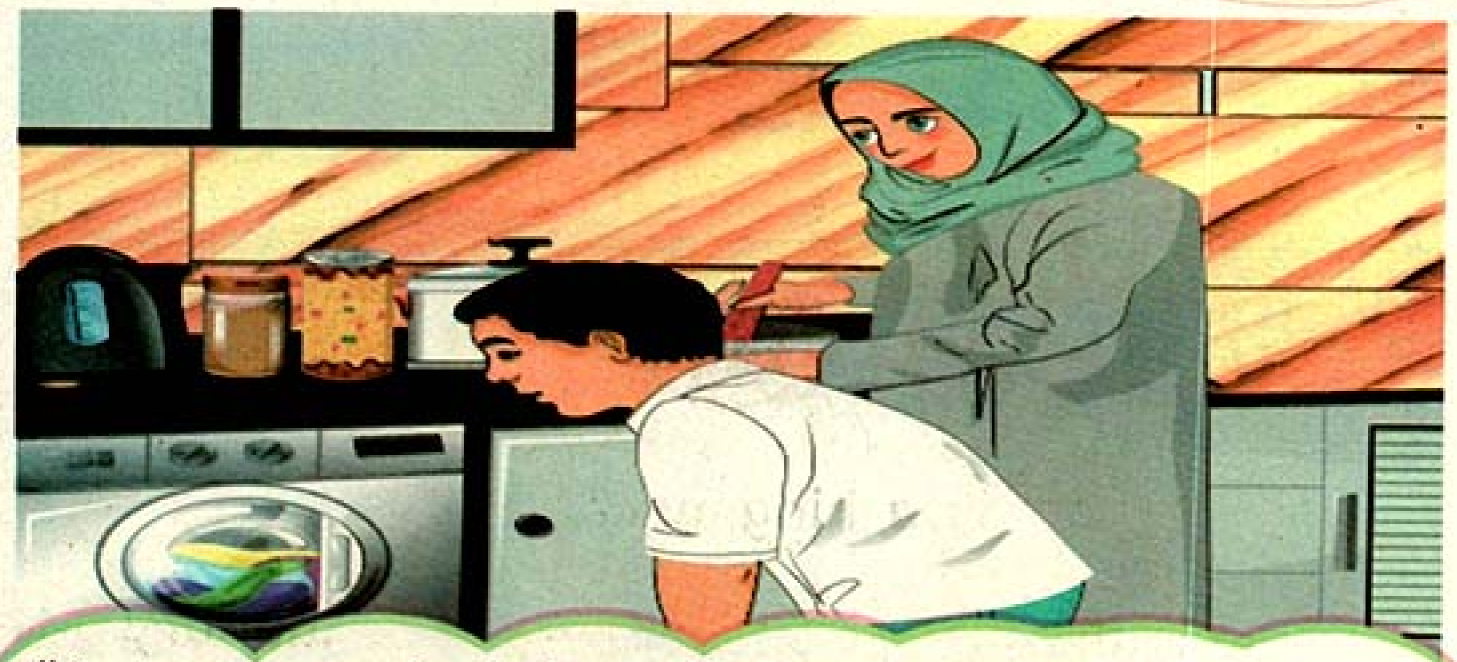




biodegradable bags
حقائب قابلة للتحلل

Help your child identify these words..

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



"Amir, can you check the washing machine? I think the wash is finished."

"Yes, it's finished, Grandma. I'll take the clothes out for you."

قالت الجدة لأمير «أمير،هل يمكنك أن تفحص الغسالة؟ أعتقد أن دورة الغسيل انتهت.»
قال أمير «نعم لقد انتهت سأقوم بإخراج الملابس لكي»



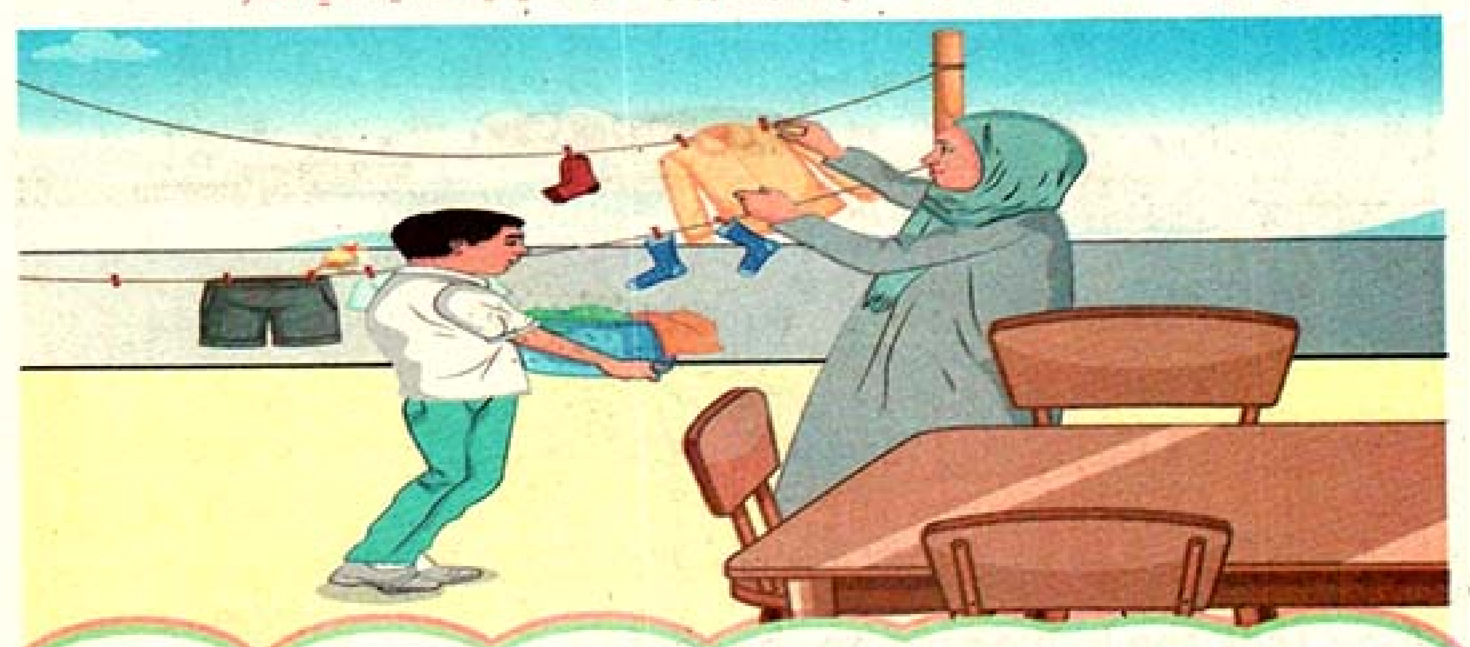
Amir took the laundry up to the roof.
From there, he could see the beautiful Nile and the village below him.

أخذ أمير الغسيل إلى أعلى السطح، واستطاع أن يرى النيل الجميل والقرية من على السطح.



Amir looked down. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water and women carried their shopping home from the market in plastic bags. He could also see plastic bottles floating down the river.

نظر أمير لأسفل. نقلت الشاحنات زجاجات المياه البلاستيكية وحملت النساء سلع التسوق التي جلبوها من السوق في حقائب بلاستيكية. واستطاع أن يرى الزجاجات البلاستيكية طافيه في النهر.

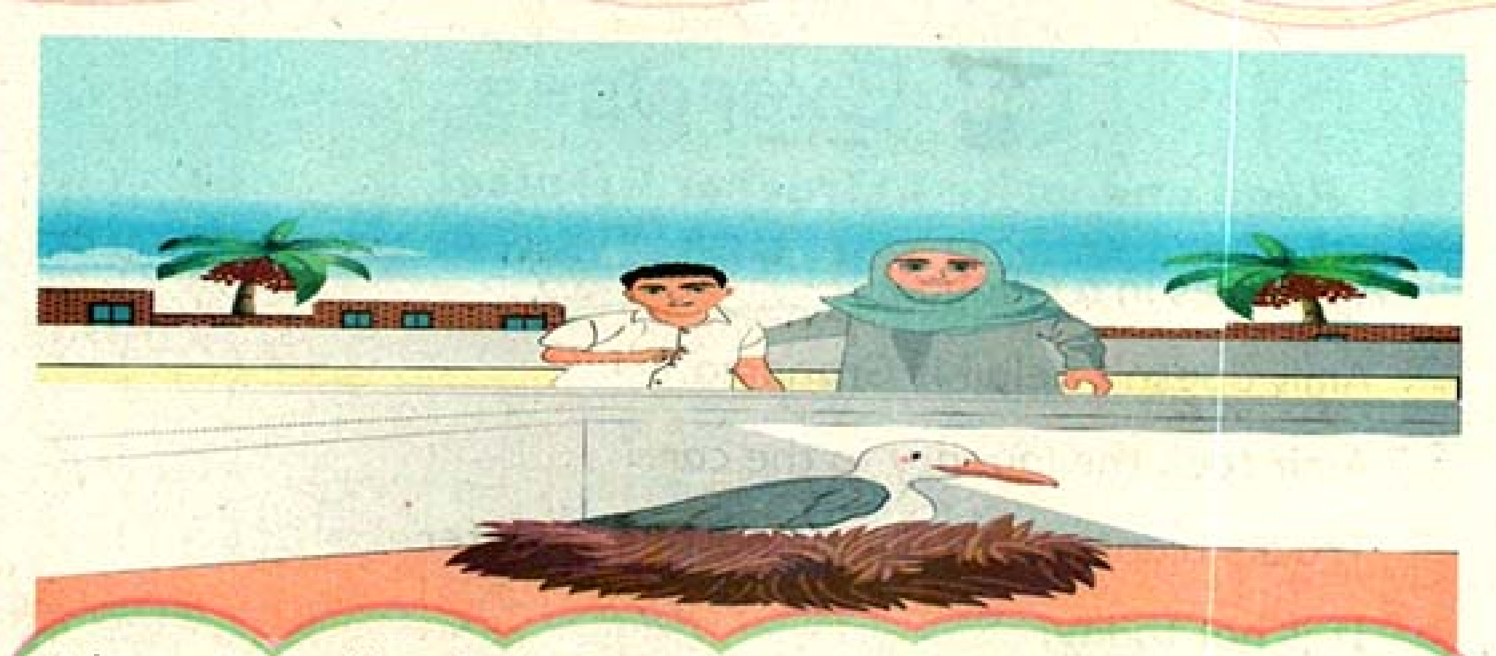


"Let's hang up these clothes quickly. It's really hot up here today," said Grandma.

قالت الجدة لأمير « هيا نقوم بنشر الغسيل بسرعة. فالجو حار هنا اليوم».

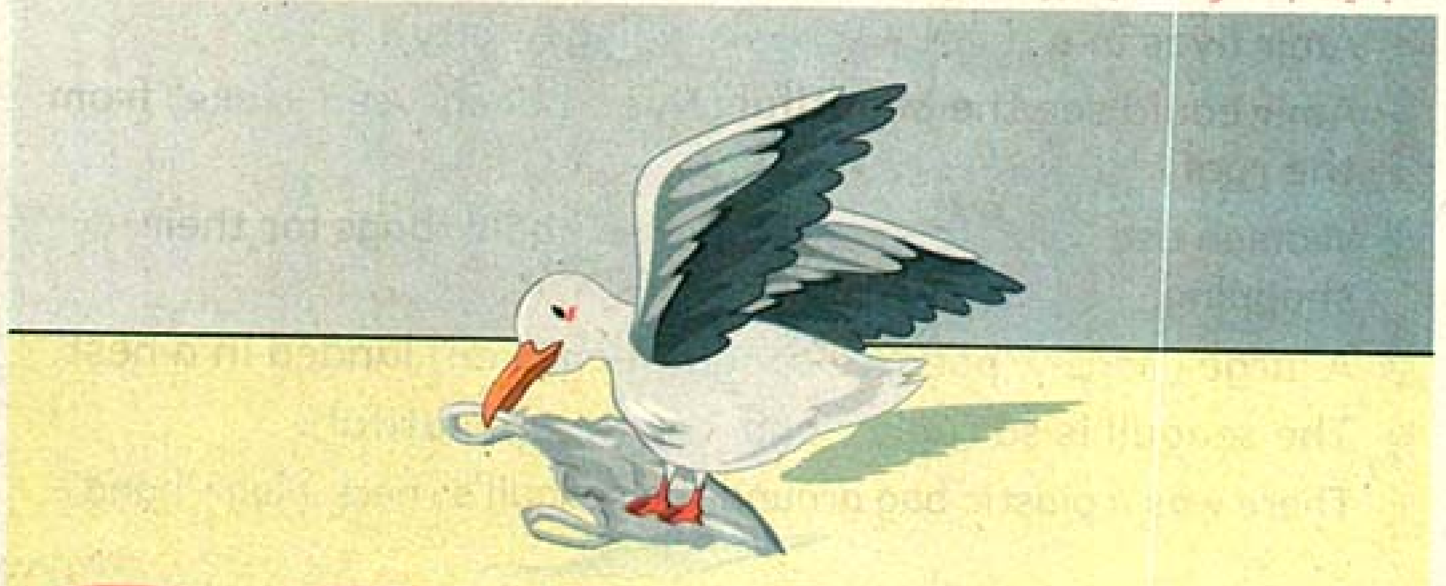
Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.



A large seagull landed in a nest on top of the neighbor's building. "Look at the seagull, Grandma! She's so beautiful", said Amir. Grandma nodded her head.
"Yes, she is," Grandma answered. "All of nature is beautiful. We must respect it."

هبط طائر النورس الكبير في عش أعلى مبنى الجار. قال أمير للجدة "انظري إلى طائر النورس يا جدتي. إنها جميلة جدًا " أومأت الجدة برأسها و قالت « نعم . كل الطبيعة جميلة ويجب أن نحترم ذلك»



Amir then noticed something horrible: there was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. "Oh no! She's in trouble," said Amir.

ثم لا حظ أمير شيئًا فظيعًا: فقد كانت هناك حقيبة بلاستيكية في ساق طائر النورس. وقال « أوه . لا! إنها في ورطة»



Exercises

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir lives in a village. ( )
2. Amir doesn't help his Grandma. ( )
3. Amir took the laundry to the car. ( )
4. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water. ( )
5. It is hot today. ( )
6. Grandma thinks that the seagull is ugly. ( )
7. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. ( )

2 Choose the correct word.

1. Amir took the (bags - laundry - dishes - birds) up to the roof.
2. Amir lives in a (boat - school - village - city).
3. Amir could see the beautiful (Nile - beach - sea - lake) from the roof.
4. Women use (plastic - metal - paper - gold) bags for their shopping.
5. A large (eagle - parrot - seagull - chicken) landed in a nest.
6. The seagull is so (ugly - bad - awful - beautiful).
7. There was a plastic bag around the seagull's (neck - leg - hand - eyes).
8. The seagull was (good - kind - in trouble - happy).
9. We must (play - waste - respect - walk) nature.
10. Amir noticed something (good - horrible - sad - kind) with the bird.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Amir's tablet was on the table where he sometimes does his homework in the evening. He picked it up and took a picture of the poor bird. Amir felt sad.

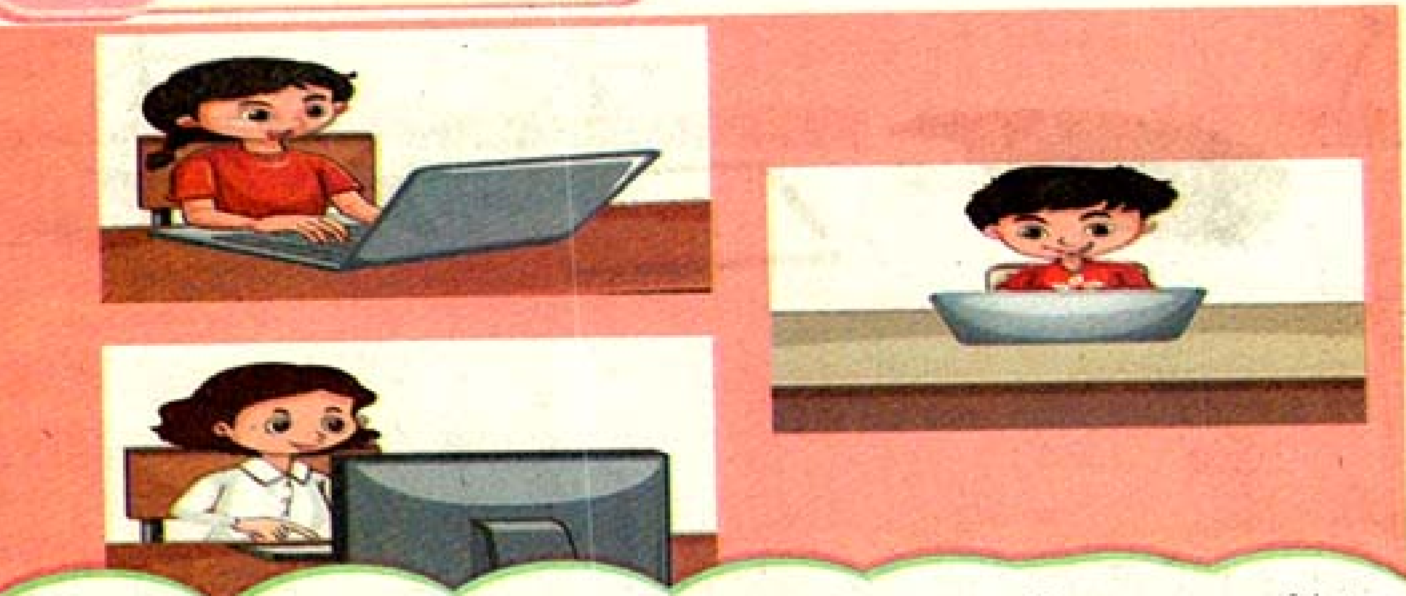
كان تابلت أمير على المنضدة حيث كان أحيانًا يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسي في المساء. التقط أمير التابلت وأخذ صورة للطائر المسكين. شعر أمير بالحزن.



Grandma saw how Amir was feeling. She put her arm around him. "It'll be OK , Amir."
"No, it won't. We have to do something to help. People are using too much plastic and it's harming the birds."
"You're a smart boy, Amir. How can we help other people understand this?" his grandma asked him.

رأت الجدة أمير حزينًا فوضعت ذراعها حوله وقالت « سيكون الطائر بخير يا أمير»
فرد أمير قائلًا « لا . لن يكون بخير. يجب أن نفعل شيئًا لمساعدته. الناس يستخدمون الكثير من البلاستيك و هذا ضار جدًا للطيور.»
قالت الجدة « أنت ولد ذكي يا أمير.» وسألته قائلة «كيف يمكننا أن نساعد الناس أن يفهموا ذلك؟»

The Story Amir takes action



That night, Amir sent the picture of the seagull to some of his friends from school. They were all very worried about the bird. "We need to help her," his friend Waleed texted back. "But what can we do?"

وفي تلك الليلة أرسل أمير صورة طائر النورس لبعض أصدقائه من المدرسة. وكانوا جميعًا قلقين بشأن ذلك الطائر. ورد وليد صديق أمير برسالة عليه قائلًا« نحن نريد مساعدتها. لكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل لها؟



Amir wanted to take action. He started researching on the internet and discovered that people use billions of plastic bags and bottles in Egypt every year. A lot of them end up in the Nile or the sea. So, he sent a message to his friends.

أراد أمير أن يتخذ إجراءً. وبدأ في البحث عبر الإنترنت واكتشف أن الناس يستخدمون المليارات من حقائب وزجاجات البلاستيك في مصر كل عام. و ينتهي بها المطاف في نهر النيل أو البحر. لذلك أرسل رسالة إلى أصدقائه.

Help your child read the story and have fun. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها



The next day, Amir, Waleed, and some other friends met at Amir's house.

They talked about different things that they could do. Amir took notes on his tablet:

في اليوم التالي، اجتمع أمير و وليد وبعض الأصدقاء في منزل أمير.
وتحدثوا عن أشياء مختلفة يمكنهم القيام بها. ودّون أمير بعض الملاحظات على التابلت الخاص به.

- Use cloth bags. We can give them to people at the market.
- Use biodegradable bags. Waleed's dad can use them at his store.
- Clean up the riverbanks. Anissa's dad can ask the fishermen to help us.
- Contact children in other towns. Dalia can send emails to her cousins.

- استخدم حقائب مصنوعة من القماش. ويمكن أن نعطي تلك الحقائب للناس في السوق.
- استخدم حقائب قابلة للتحلل. ويستطيع والد وليد استخدامها في متجره.
- نظّف ضفاف النهر . ويستطيع والد أنيسة أن يطلب من الصيادين مساعدتنا.
- اتّصل بالأطفال في المدن الأخرى. تستطيع داليا أن ترسل بريد إلكتروني لأبناء عمها.

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها



1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir was sad when he saw the seagull with a plastic bag around its leg. ( )
2. Amir's friends didn't want to help him with his plan. ( )
3. Dalia took a pictures of seagulls and sent them to her friends. ( )
4. Amir wanted to take action. ( )
5. Amir made a new volunteer group. ( )
6. Amir is a bad boy. ( )
7. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his tablet. ( )
8. The plastic bottles are harming the birds. ( )
9. A lot of plastic bags and bottles end up in the Nile and the sea. ( )
10. Amir discovered that people used millions of plastic bags and bottles. ( )

2 Choose the correct word.

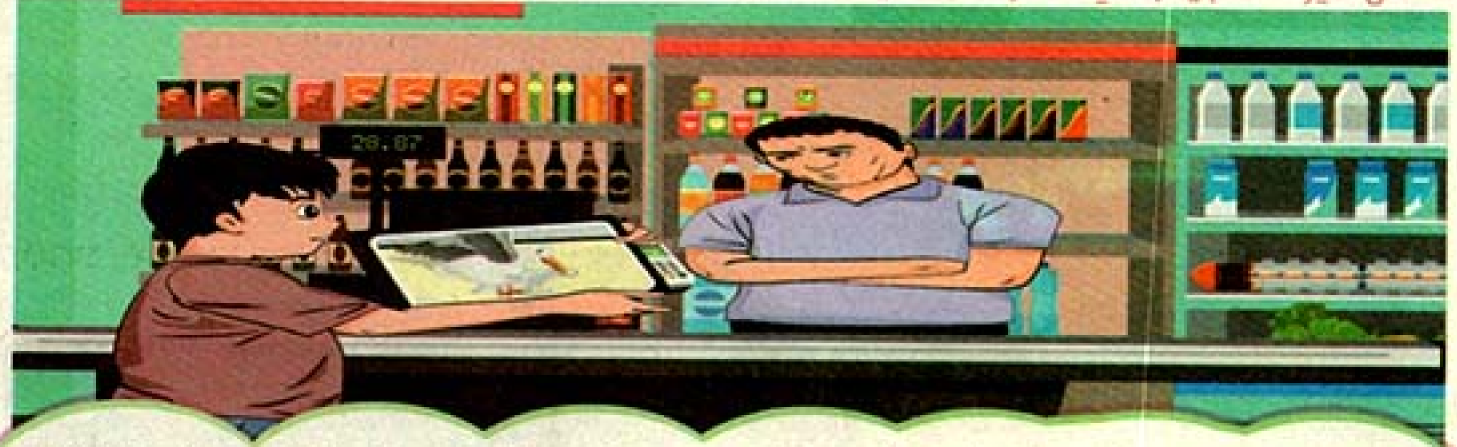
1. Amir took a picture of the poor bird with his (camera - cellphone - tablet - computer).
2. Amir was (sad - happy - delighted - pleased) about the poor bird.
3. Amir sent the picture of the seagull to his (dad - mum - grandma - friends).
4. Amir and his friends talked about their (plane - plan - school - food), to save the Nile.
5. The friends can give people (paper - metal - cloth - plastic) bags at the market.
6. Waleed's dad can use biodegradable bags at his (house - ship - store - car).
7. Anissa's dad can ask the (fishermen - old men - policemen - women) to help him.
8. Dalia can send emails to her (friends - children - boys - cousins).

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Amir explained his ideas to his grandma. She volunteered to help, too. “I have some old cotton cloth,Amir. I can sew some shopping bags for you. Will that help?’
“Yes, Grandma, Thank you! That will help a lot’

شرح أمير أفكاره لجدته. وتطوعت الجدة من أجل المساعدة أيضًا وقالت لأمير «لدي بعض الأقمشة القطنية القديمة. يمكنني أن أقوم بخياطة بعض حقائب التسوق من أجلك. هل هذا سيساعد؟»
قال أمير « نعم يا جدتي، أشكرك. هذا سيساعد كثيرًا»



Waleed went to his dad’s grocery store. “Dad, please help us. Let’s stop using plastic bags in our store. We can use biodegradable ones instead.” “Waleed, why should we do that?” his father asked. Waleed, showed him Amir’s picture of the seagull. His dad looked sad. “OK, Waleed. I’ll help you. We’ll start using these biodegradable bags. We must help the river.”

ذهب وليد إلى متجر البقالة الخاص بوالده و قال له « أبي من فضلك ساعدنا. هيّا نتوقف عن استخدام الحقائب البلاستيكية في متجرنا. ونستخدم الحقائب القابلة للتحلل بدلًا منها.»
ردَّ والده سائلًا « لم ينبغي أن نفعل ذلك؟» عرض وليد صورة طائر النورس التي التقطها أمير. بدا على والده الحزن وقال: « نعم . يا وليد سأساعدك. سنبدأ في استخدام تلك الحقائب القابلة للتحلل. يجب أن نساعد في نظافة النهر.»

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها



Anissa's dad works at the market. She showed him Amir's picture of the seagull and told him all about their plans.
" I'll ask the fishermen to help us take the plastic out of the river. They'll help us. The water is important for all of us," he said.

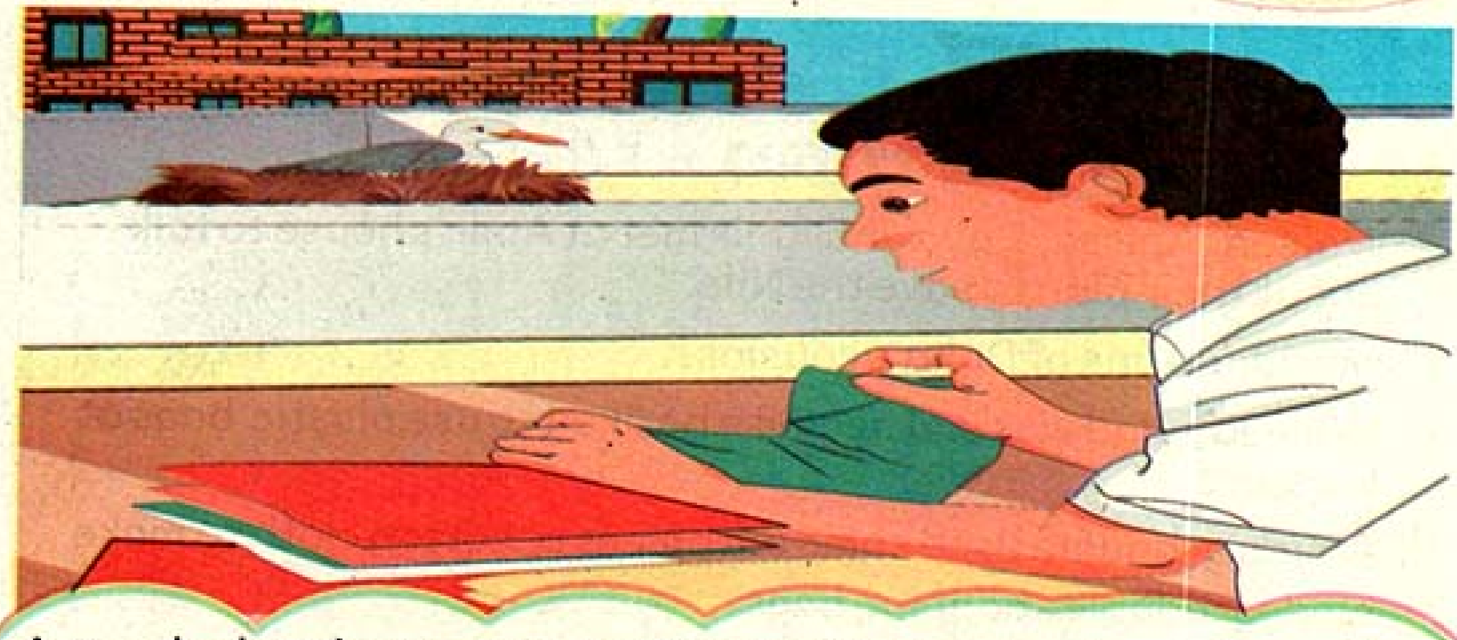
يعمل والد أنيسة في السوق. عرضت أنيسة على والدها صورة طائر النورس التي التقطها أمير و أخبرته عن كل خططهم. قال لها والدها «سأطلب من الصيادين أن يساعدونا في إخراج البلاستيك من النهر. وسيساعدونا في ذلك. فماء النهر مهم لنا جميعًا».



Dalia sent emails to all her cousins. They lived in other villages around Egypt.
"Dalia, this is a great idea," her cousin Mariam wrote back. "We will be happy to help in our village,too."

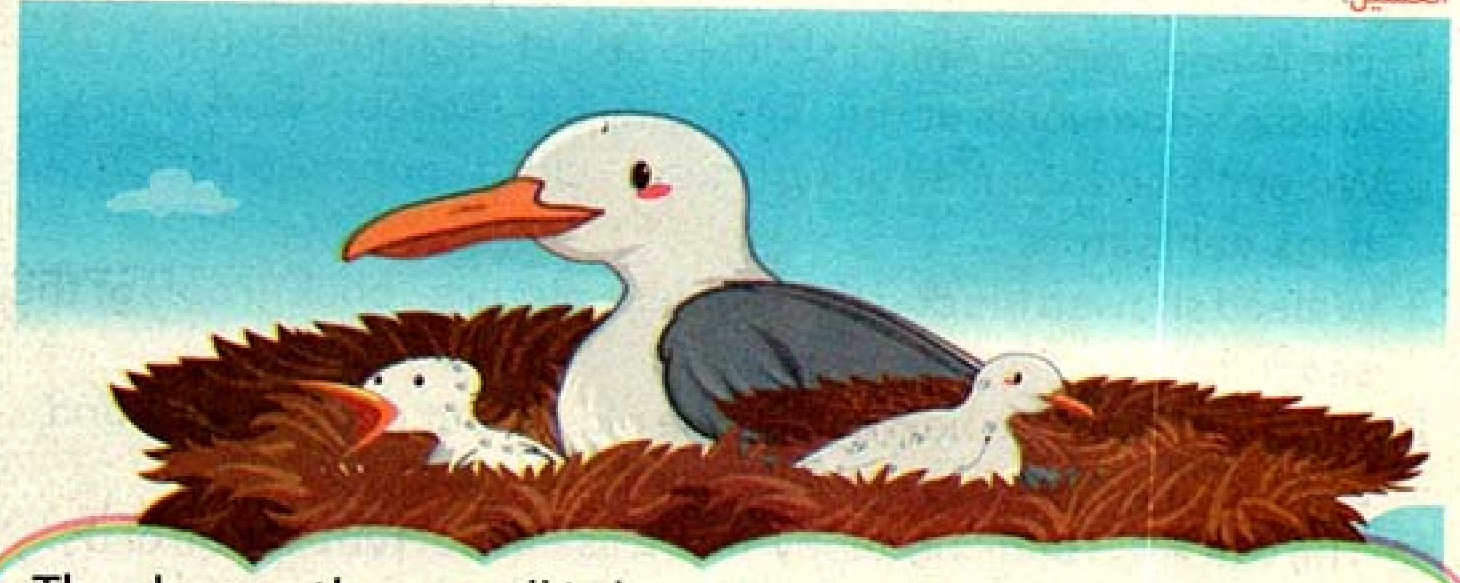
قامت داليا بإرسال بريد إلكتروني لأبناء عمها. حيث يعيشون في قرى أخرى في أنحاء مصر. ردت ابنة عمها مريم برسالة قائلة « هذه فكرة رائعة. سوف نكون سعداء لمساعدة قريتنا أيضًا.»

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.



A couple days later, Amir went onto his grandma's roof to get her laundry. He saw the colorful cloth she was going to use to sew the cotton shopping bags. He started folding it and putting it in the laundry basket.

وبعد يومين صعد أمير إلى سطح بيت جدته لجمع الغسيل.
ورأى القماش الملون التي ستستخدمه الجدة في خياطة حقائب التسوق القطنية. وبدأ في طيها في سلة الغسيل.



Then he saw the seagull in her nest. He remembered the plastic around her leg. Suddenly, two baby seagulls put their heads out of the nest. Amir smiled. He knew that he and his friends together could make a change.

ثم رأى أنثى طائر النورس في عشها. فتذكر البلاستيك الذي كان حول ساقها وفجأة طل صغار النورس برأسيهما من العش. ابتسم أمير. وعلم حينها أنه وأصدقائه يمكنهم إحداث تغيير.

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويستمتع بها.

Exercises

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Waleed, Anissa, Dalia and Amir met at Amir's house to talk about their plan to save the Nile. (   )
2. Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins. (   )
3. Waleed's dad was sad because he liked to use plastic bags at his store. (   )
4. Amir's grandma used some old pieces of cotton cloth to make biodegradable shopping bags. (   )
5. Grandma volunteered to help. (   )
6. Anissa's dad works at school. (   )
7. The water isn't important for us. (   )
8. The seagull has two babies. (   )

2 Choose the correct word.

1. The friends met at Amir's (house - street - school - club).
2. Anissa's dad works at the (ship - market - school - workshop).
3. Waleed's dad stopped using (metal - cloth - paper - plastic) bags at his store.
4. Waleed showed his dad the (babies - picture - book - roof) of the seagull.
5. The fishermen can help taking the plastic out of the (sky - land - ground - river).
6. The water is (bad - unhappy - useless - important) for all of us.
7. Dalia sent emails to all her (babies - cousins - sisters - brothers).
8. The children will be (sad - unhappy - happy - unkind) to help their village.
9. The seagull is in her (net - nut - nest - web).
10. The seagull has two (babies - sisters - brothers - cousins).

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Unit (7) ALL AROUND THE WORLD

Environments البيئات

coastal	ساحلية	desert	صحراوية	urban	حضرية
mountainous	جبلية	rural	ريفية	polar	قطبية
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	temperature	درجة الحرارة	difficult	صعبة

Pollution التلوث

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	water pollution	تلوث الماء
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	climate change	تغير المناخ
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	emissions	انبعاثات

Energy الطاقة

Renewable	متجددة	Non-renewable	غير متجددة
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	coal	فحم
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز
tidal energy	طاقة المد و الجزر	oil	بترول
geothermal energy	الطاقة الحرارية (المنبعثة من باطن الأرض)		

Other words

generate (d)	يولد	store (d)	يخزن	absorb (ed)	يمتص
hydroelectricity	طاقة كهرومائية	release (d)	يطلق	heat	حرارة
waterwheels	السواقي	take out	يخرج	turbine	توربين

Large Numbers

1,000 (one thousand)	10,000 (ten thousand)
100,000 (one hundred thousand)	1,000,000 (one million)
10,000,000 (ten million)	100,000,000 (one hundred million)
1,000,000,000 (one billion)	

Help your child revise unit (7). ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة .



The Present Continuous Tense

Form: Subject + (am / is / are) + (v + ing)

e.g. I'm walking to school.

Usage: To express an action that is happening now.

Key words:

now	الآن	Listen!	استمع!	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
Look!	انظر!	today	اليوم	at present	في الوقت الحاضر

Negative:

Subject + (am / is / are) + not + (v + ing)

e.g. I am not using recycled bags.

Yes / No question:

Is + (he / she / it / a singular noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Is he walking to school? Yes, he is. No, he isn't.

Are + (they / we / you / a plural noun) + (v+ing)...?

e.g. Are they watching a TV program? Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (is /are) + subject + (v+ing)...?

e.g. What is he doing now?

He is driving an electric car.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. The world needs lots of (animals - sweets - land - trees).
2. Trees take out (carbon dioxide - carbon - oxygen - water) from the air.
3. People cut down trees to build (school - zoos - homes - towers).
4. It's (useless - important - unhappy - wrong) to plant new trees.

2 Listen and complete.

1. The urban environment is .... populated.
2. .... people live in this environment.
3. There are a lot of .... in this environment.
4. There can be a lot of ...., too.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

keep - doing - garbage - creating

Wael : What are you .... (1) ...., Amal?

Amal : I am .... (2) .... a website about pollution on mount Everest.

Wael : How are people helping to .... (3) .... the environment clean there?

Amal : They don't leave any .... (4) .... on the mountain.

Wael : They're amazing.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Karahnjukar Hydroelectricity plant

karahnjukar is a hydroelectricity plant in eastern Iceland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant in Iceland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs of water. Water from the reservoirs travels through 73 kilometers of underground water tunnels. Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The karahnjukar Dam is the largest of the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It generates more than 690.000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The karahnjukar hydroelectric plant is in (Egypt - America - Iceland - France).
2. There are (five - four - six - one) dams across two rivers.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How high is the karahnjukar Dam?

....

4. What is the power from the karahnjukar Dam used for ?

....

5 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

1. There are high mountains in a (urban - rural - mountainous - polar) environment.
2. It's very cold in (rainforest - polar - rural - desert) environment.
3. There are lots of (rivers - sand - trees - beaches) in a rainforest.
4. The (rainforest - urban - rural - coastal) environment is where the land is next to the sea.
5. There are lots of trees in a (rural - polar - rainforest - urban) environment.

6. There can be a lot of traffic in (polar - mountainous - urban - rural) areas.
7. It's very (cold - snowy - dry - warm) in a desert environment.
8. (Carbon dioxide - Fuel - Electricity - Recycling) is something we burn to make heat or power.
9. (Oxygen - Emissions - Wind - Fuel) are made by factories, cars and trucks.
10. Emissions can cause air (recycling - heating - pollution - planting).
11. It's important to (eat - throw - drop - recycle) plastic.
12. (Climate change - Pollution - Carbon dioxide - Recycling) is when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time.
13. Fossil fuels are things like coal, (water - sun - gas - snow) and oil.
14. (Carbon dioxide - Renewable - Non-renewable - Fossil fuels) energies don't make pollution.
15. A (polar - desert - coastal - rainforest) environment can get a lot of wind.

Choose the correct word (Structure).

1. We are (ride - rides - riding - rode) our bikes to school.
2. Sarah (walk - walked - walking - is walking) to school today.
3. They aren't (picking - pick - picks - picked) up garbage on the beach today.
4. We (is learning - learning - are learning - learn) about emissions at school.
5. (You are - Are you - Are - Is) reading an article about climate change?
6. Jasmine isn't (watching - watch - watched - watches) the TV program about forest fires.
7. I (am writing - is writing - writing - writes) an essay about plastic pollution.
8. That woman is (collecting - collect - collects - collected) plastic bags.

9 Look! They (helps - helped - are helping - helping) to keep the environment clean.

10 What are you (do - does - doing - did) ?

11 Are you (going - goes - go - went) to school?

12 What is he (reads - reading - read - are reading) ?

13 We are (recycled - recycle - recycles - recycling) plastic bottles.

14 Mum (isn't - aren't - don't - doesn't) listening to the podcast .

15 Look! They (is planting - are planting - plants - planted) trees.

16 What is he (watched - watching - watch - watches)?

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 kind of - live - What - do - you - environment - in - ?

....

2 are - There - lots of - trees - a rainforest - in - .

....

3 comes - natural - Geothermal - energy - from - sources - .

....

4 help - the - Trees - protect - to - environment - .

....

5 cold - Iceland - is - country - a - .

....

6 is - Why - it - important - recycle - to - ?

....

7 can - do - What - to - we - help - environment - the - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Water pollution"

Guiding words:

important - keep - plastic - bottles - garbage - chemicals

....

....

....

....

8 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 They are helping the environment. (He)

....

2 Noura is watching a TV program now. (not)

....

3 Yes, he is walking to school. (Is he..?)

....

4 I am reading a book. (What..?)

....

5 No, we aren't recycling plastic bags. (Are..?)

....

9 Read and match.

1 Kilowatt is
2 Today we're
3 The Arctic is
4 A turbine is a

a cold and windy.
b machine to make energy.
c a unit for measuring electrical power.
d talking about pollution.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

10 Correct the underlined word(s).

1. I walk to school now. (....................)
2. Today we're talk about pollution. (....................)
3. Look! He wait for the bus. (....................)
4. We are learn about climate change. (....................)
5. At the moment Hana watch a TV program. (....................)
6. Listen! The girls listen to music. (....................)
7. What are you read? (....................)
8. Are you help the environment? (....................)
9. What is fossil fuels? (....................)
10. It doesn't going into the sea. (....................)

11 Punctuate the following sentences.

- why is it important to save the environment

....

- iceland is a cold country

....

Unit (8) CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

Vocabulary

festival	عيد	fast (v)	يصوم
celebration	احتفال	feast	وليمة
charity	جمعية خيرية	sacrifice	يضحي
creation	خلق	sunrise	الشروق
fairgrounds	الملاهي- ساحات الألعاب	sunset	الغروب
prayer	صلاة-دعاء	beans	فول
grateful	شاكر	garlic	ثوم
olive oil	زيت زيتون	herbs	أعشاب
buttons	أزرار	spices	توابل
galabeya	جلابية	vinegar	خل
hizam	حزام	sleeves	أكمام(الجلابية)
linen	كتان	sandals	صندل
loose	واسع- فضفاض	guest	ضيف
striped	مقلم	host	مضيف
shipwreck	حطام سفينة	generous	كريم
pastry	فطيرة (معجنات)	sights	معالم

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

celebrate with يحتفل مع	make a meal يعد وجبة	play music يعزف موسيقى
her own book كتابها الخاص بها	make...with يصنع...بـ	go down تغيب - تغرب
make a lantern يصنع فانوسًا	get ready يستعد	at sunrise عند الشروق
in different colors بألوان مختلفة	come up تشرق	give information يقدم معلومات





The Present Simple Tense

Form:

I / We / You / They / A plural noun	+ inf.
He / She / It / A singular noun	+ inf. + v + (s / es / ies)

e.g.
- Men often wear the galabeya.
- Sara wears a skirt every day.

Negative:

I / We / You / They / A plural noun	+ don't	+ inf.
He / She / It / A singular noun	+ doesn't	+ inf.

e.g.
- I don't wear kaftan.
- She doesn't wear hizam.

Yes, No question:

Do + (I / they / we / you / a plural noun)	+	inf. ...?
Does + (he / she / it / a singular noun)	+	inf. ...?

e.g.
- Do you usually wear sandals?

Yes, I do. No, I don't.

- Does he wear loose clothes?

Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

Wh- question:

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf...?

e.g.
- What do you wear to do sports?

I wear a T-shirt and shorts.

Help your child revise the present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك على أن يراجع زمن المضارع البسيط



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 Eid Al-Adha lasts for (two - three - four - six) days.

2 Many people sacrifice a (cow - sheep - horse - cat).

3 We give out (fish - clothes - money - meat) to our family.

4 We go to the (mosque - school - club - market) for prayers.

2 Listen and complete.

1 Abu Simbel Temples are near ....

2 Outside the temples, there are some very big ....

3 People celebrate the festival .... a year.

4 Light from the sun at .... shines all the way inside the main temple.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

Grandma - celebrate - going

Omar : Hello, Sara. Where are you .... (1) ....?

Sara : I'm going to my .... (2) ....

Omar : Why?

Sara : To .... (3) .... her birthday.

Omar : You look beautiful in this dress.

Sara : Thank you.

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

spring - paint - Sham El-Nessim

Aya : What are you celebrating today?

Sama : We are celebrating .... (1) ....

Aya : What is it for?

Sama : It's for the start of .... (2) ....

Aya : What do you do?

Sama : We boil eggs then we .... (3) .... them.

5 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

1. Eid (Al-Fitr - Al-Adha - Easter -Sham El-Nessim) is during the month of Zu Elhijja. (WB)
2. Children go to (schools - hospitals - fairgrounds - beaches) to have fun on the rides.
3. People go to mosques for (prayers - players - eating - sleeping) during Eid Al-Adha. (WB)
4. Farmers go to work at (noon - night - sunrise - sunset) and go home in the afternoon. (WB)
5. We are (bad - grateful - useful - well) that we are healthy. (WB)
6. (Hawawshi - Fatta - Pizza - Full medames) is made with beef or lamb.
7. We always eat (fish - sayadeya - fatta - hawawshi) at Eid Al-Adha.
8. Ancient Egyptians wore clothes made of (cotton - plastic - linen - silk).
9. Linen keeps people (hot - cool - warm - sunny).

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

10 Kunafa is a delicious (dessert - juice - desert -sandwich).

11 People usually make (lambs - lamb - lanterns -clothes) at Ramadan.

12 Give (out - in - up -to) is to offer something.

13 Muslims go to the (funfair - prayers - pilgrimage - festival) during the month of Zu Elhijja.

14 Fatta takes a long time to (eat - digest - drink - cook), so we don't eat it very often.

15 Grandma shares (photos - pictures - recipes - pens) from her cook book with friends.

Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1 People don't (often - always - never - now) eat fatta because it's difficult to digest. (WB)

2 Press the bread (careful - carefully - easily - easy) around the meat to make hawawshi. (WB)

3 People (always - never - yet - ever) eat ful medames with bread. (WB)

4 Sayadeya is (ever - sometimes - never - always) made by people who live near the coast.

5 Grandma loves cooking and she cooks (good - well - bad - badly).

6 Today, I (make - makes - am making - are making) kahk with my mom and dad.

7 We always (eat - eats - are eating - eating) fesikh at Sham El-Nessim.

8 I (wear usually - wear often - usually wear - wear always) colorful clothes.

9. Fares is in the garden with his dad. Fares (help - helps - is helping - helped) him now.
10. Dina's mom (works - is working - work - worked) in an office every day.
11. I always (wear - wears - is wearing - am wearing) loose clothes.
12. Today, we (celebrate - are celebrating - celebrates - celebrated) Eid Al-Fitr.
13. Look at these! I (paint - painted - am painting - paints) some eggs for Sham El-Nessim.
14. Fares (live - lives - is living - living) in an apartment near the coast.
15. My brother can run (quick - quickly - easy - good).

6 Read and complete the sentence with the words from the box:

sunset - Fatta - fairgrounds - lantern

1. Children like going to the .... during Sham El-Nessim.
2. .... is soon. It's getting dark.
3. Hang the .... on the front door of your house.
4. .... has layers of rice and bread with tomato sauce.

7 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

spring - eggs - traditional - celebrating

I love ....(1).......... Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of ....(2).......... and it is very old. Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different ....(3).......... food, often until sunset. We also paint and decorate ....(4).......... in different colors.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

8 Read and match.

1 We eat fatta
2 Ful medames is
3 The galabeya
4 We fast

a has long sleeves.
b in Ramadan.
c at Eid Al-Adha.
d made with beans.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

9 Correct the underlined word(s).

1 He always wear sandals. (....................)
2 Do you eating hawawshi now? (....................)
3 My mom cooks good. (....................)
4 People often don't eat fatta. (....................)
5 What are you do at the moment? (....................)
6 We always go to school on Fridays. (....................)
7 Nadia living in Luxor with her family. (....................)
8 What are you usually wear on the weekend? (....................)
9 Today, I help my mum at home. (....................)
10 Look careful before you cross the road. (....................)

10 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 Nour always wears a blue dress. (today)

....

2 We are celebrating Eid Al-Fitr. (What...?)

....

3 Are you making cookies? (Do...?)

....

4 They often eat meat. (now)

....

5 Nadia makes good cookies. (not)

....

11 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think Egypt is a great country to visit. You can visit the pyramids of Giza. The Library in Alexandria, or the beautiful Temple of Hatshepsut in the Valley of the Kings. There are so many things to see. It's a fantastic place to have a holiday. You can take a boat trip down the Nile or go camping in the desert or you can go scuba diving in the Red Sea. The spring festival of Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. We have picnics in the park with our families and we eat special food. We paint and decorate eggs. It's fun! My favorite Egyptian dishes are the ones we eat at festival! We eat a delicious dessert called kunafa at Eid Al-Adha and special cookies called kahk at Eid Al-Fiter!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 The pyramids are at (Cairo - Giza - Alexandria - Luxor).

2 We take a boat trip down the (Sea - Red Sea - Nile - Giza).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What temple can you visit?

....

4 Which festival do people celebrate in spring?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

12 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 is - country - Egypt - to visit - a fantastic - .

....

2 some - There - very - are - statues - big - .

....

3 do - on - What - special - wear - you - days - ?

....

4 keeps - cool - Linen - you - .

....

5 a very - Islamic - Eid Al-Adha - festival - is - important - .

....

13 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"A visit to the Pyramids"

Guiding words:

Giza - Great - friends - Sphinx - enjoyed

....
....
....
....
....

14 Punctuate the following sentences.

- ancient egyptians had many festivals

....

- we celebrate eid al-Adha

....

- what do you wear at sham el-Nessim

....

- egypt has many beautiful places

....

- do you eat fattah at eid el-fitr

....

- people fast during ramadan

....

Unit (9) OUR CULTURE

Vocabulary

cultural heritage تراث ثقافي	agriculture زراعة	irrigation الري
identity الهوية	ancient Egypt مصر القديمة	monuments آثار
archaeologist عالم آثار	temple معبد	calendar تقويم
site موقع أثري	civilization حضارة	cruise جولة نيلية
artifacts مصنوعات يدوية	board game لعبة لوحية	mask قناع
engravings نقوش	bury يدفن	perfume عطر
carve ينحت	pottery أواني فخارية	counter بيدق (قطعة شطرنج)
clay صلصال	tool أداة يدوية	vase زهرية
horizontal أفقي	vertical رأسي	bar chart تمثيل بياني بالأعمدة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

historical site موقع تاريخي	lead to يؤدي إلى
a long white dress فستان أبيض طويل	proud of فخور بـ
The Step Pyramid of Djoser هرم زوسر المدرج	find out يكتشف
The Temple of karnak معبد الكرنك	walk away يمشي بعيدًا
Qaitbay Citadel قلعة قايتباي	because of بسبب
International Museum Day اليوم العالمي للمتاحف	look for يبحث عن
The Statue of Amenhotep III تمثال أمنحتب الثالث	connect to يرتبط بـ
Tutankhamun's Mask قناع توت عنخ آمون	a piece of قطعة من
Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat مركب الشمس للفرعون خوفو	go up يصعد لأعلى

Work book Vocabulary

advanced	متقدم	canal	قناة ري	bring (brought)	يحضر
invent (ed)	يخترع	turn on (ed)	يشغل	Abydos	تمثال ابيدوس
online	متصل بالنت	throne	العرش	sculpture	تمثال منحوت
transportation	نقل	royal	ملكي	papyrus	ورق البردي

Language





Form
The second form of the verb

📌 يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (أي بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم و غير المنتظم يحفظ)

- I visited Luxor last week.
- They saw the lion in the zoo.

Usage
📌 يدل على حدث انتهى في الماضي.

- I went to school late yesterday.

Negative
Subject + didn't + inf.

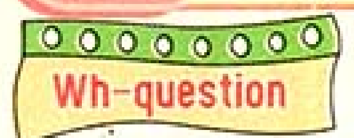
- We didn't watch TV yesterday.

Question
Yes, No question

Did + subject + inf. ?

Did you study English yesterday?

- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.



Final Revision

Wh-question

Q.W + did + subject + inf. ?

Where did you go yesterday?

I went to the club.

Keywords

yesterday أمس	last الماضي	... ago منذ
in (2010) في عام ٢٠١٠	in the past في الماضي	

The Past Continuous الماضي المستمر

Form

I - He - She - It → a singular noun → was + v + ing
They - You - We → a plural noun → were + v + ing

He was sitting under a tree.

Negative

Subject + (wasn't/weren't) + v + ing?

We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

Yes, No question

Was / Were + subject + v + ing?

Were they playing tennis?

Yes, they were.   No, they weren't.

Wh-question

Q.W + (was/were) + subject + v + ing?

What were you doing at 4 p.m yesterday?

I was watching TV.

Keywords

yesterday morning	yesterday evening
at 3 a.m yesterday	

Usage

To express an action that was happening at a certain past time.

يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر ليعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا لفترة محددة في الماضي:

They were having dinner yesterday evening.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. You can visit the Temple of karnak in (Aswan - Giza - Luxor - Cairo).
2. The ancient Egyptian (waved - killed - buried - visited) their kings and queens.
3. Many tourist visit Luxor from a (cruise - plane - taxi - train) on the Nile River.
4. The ancient Egyptians carved the Sphinx from one piece of (wood - stone - glass - gold).

2 Listen and complete.

1. The oldest stone monument in Egypt is in ....
2. The Step Pyramid belongs to King ....
3. Alexandria used to be the .... of Egypt.
4. Qaitbay Citadel is in ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

Library - interesting - Alexandria - doing

Omar : Where were you yesterday, Nabil?

Nabil : I was in .... (1) ....

Omar : What were you .... (2) .... there ?

Nabil : I was visiting Alexandria ...... (3) ....

Omar : Was your visit .... (4) ....

Nabil : Yes, it was.



Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

Giza - protect - stones - Sphinx

Salma : Where are the pyramids?

Esraa : They are in .... (1) ....

Salma : What are they made of ?

Esraa : They are made of .... (2) ....

Salma : Why did ancient Egyptians built the .... (3) .... ?

Esraa : To .... (4) .... the Pyramids.

4 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

1. A country's (sport - heritage - pyramid - irrigation) comes from its history and traditions.
2. Heritage includes arts, buildings, music and dancing from the (past - present - future - certain time).
3. (Temples - Libraries - Hospitals - Schools) and monuments are an important part of Egyptian heritage.
4. People in ancient Egypt (broke - grew - developed - ate) agriculture and calendars.
5. The ancient Egyptians were an advanced (civilization - site - season - location).
6. Archaeologists explore historical (music - sites - plants - food) to learn about the past.
7. A country's history and traditions are part of its (crops - seasons - identity - econmy).
8. A (field - calendar - map - site) shows us the twelve months of the year.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

9. In the past the Nile (rained - snowed - flooded - blew) during the flooding season.
10. The soil was fertile and good for farming in the (flooding - growing - harvesting - snowing) season.
11. During the (harvesting - flooding - growing - raining) season, farmers cut and stored crops.
12. The ancient Egyptians built the Step Pyramid for (Prince - Queen - King - Princess) Djoser.
13. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to (destroy - break - protect - cut) the pyramids.
14. Many tourists travel down the Nile on a (bike - cruise - train - car).
15. You can show artifacts in a/an (drawer - exhibition - bedroom - kitchen).

Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1. Sara and her parents (looks - has looked - were looking - looking) at the Egyptian artifacts in the museum.
2. Sara (have read - was reading - reading - were reading) some information to her parents from the museum brochure.
3. Archaeologists (finds - was finding - found - finding) a senet game in Egyptian tombs.
4. Sara (were turning - turned - will turn - turning) on her phone and started to look online.
5. My mum (was sitting - sits - will sit - sitting) on a chair yesterday morning.

6. The ancient Egyptians (will bury - bury - buried - buries) their kings and queens.
7. Did the ancient Egyptians (carved - carve - were carving - carves) the Sphinx from a stone?
8. The ancient Egyptians (make - will make - made - makes) pots from clay.
9. What (you were doing - do you do - were you doing - have you done) at 5 pm yesterday?
10. Where (was - are - were - is) you born?
11. They (was playing - were playing - plays - playing) the senet game.
12. The archaeologist (were digging - was digging - will dig - digs) when she found an old box.
13. Sami (made - were making - was making - make) cookies when his dad came home.
14. Mona and Salma (visits - were visiting - was visiting - visiting) a museum.
15. When I (saw - see - was seeing - sees) Fares, I was studying in the library.

5 Read and complete the sentence with the words from the box:

heritage - senet - solar - pottery

1. Ancient Egyptians used lots of ....
2. Khufu's .... boat is a wooden boat in his tomb.
3. Agriculture is a part of Egypt's ....
4. Ancient Egyptians played .... game in the past.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

seasons - civilization - fertile - flood

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to ....(1).................. every year making the soil more ....(2)........... This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in ....(3)................. .There were three ....(4)........... of farming in ancient Egypt which were all connected to the Nile.

6 Read and match.

1. My family visit
2. The farmer saw
3. Ahmed was taking
4. Senet is the world's

a. his goat walking away.
b. Siwa Oasis every year.
c. oldest board game.
d. a photo of the bird.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

7 Correct the underlined words:

1. Archaeologists find tombs last year. (......................)
2. What was he do yesterday evening? (......................)
3. Dina were visiting the museum. (......................)
4. Ali did his homework when he saw a bird. (......................)
5. Did you happy yesterday? (......................)
6. The children are playing a game yesterday. (......................)
7. My friend sits under a tree last week. (......................)
8. What you were doing at 6 pm yesterday? (......................)
9. Ottah take out some counters from his bag yesterday. (......................)
10. Ottah sat down with Akil and show him a long wooden box. (......................)

8 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1. I buy some pens every week. (last week)

....

2. They walked. They saw the king. (when)

....

3. I was having breakfast yesterday morning. (What)

....

4. I was born in Giza. (Where)

....

5. We watched TV yesterday. (at 5 pm yesterday)

....

9 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River Nile. Every year the Nile flooded during the flooding season. The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of water. The flooding season lasted from June to September. After the flood water went away, the soil was fertile and good for farming. The growing season lasted from October to February. During this time, farmers planted their crops. They dug canals to carry water from the river to the fields. During the harvesting season, farmers cut and stored their crops. It lasted from March to May.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Nile flooded during the (harvesting - flooding - growing - planting) season.
2. The flooding season lasted four (3 month - 4 months - 5 months - 2 months).
3. Farmers dug (wells - rivers - canals - seas) to carry water from the river to fields.

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did the farmers plant their crops? ....
5. How long is the harvesting season? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

10 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 did - find - What - you - artifacts - ?

2 has - design - museum - new - to - Adam - a- .

3 a bar chart - show - Mazen - to - used - information - his - .

4 a country's - a - heritage - of - Agriculture - part - is- .

5 watching - home - came - I - when - was- TV- Ali- .

11 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"A historical site"

Guiding words:

Sphinx - Pyramids - culture - Egypt - heritage

12 Punctuate the following sentences.

- khufu is famous for building the great pyramid at giza
- nada and ola were watching tv
- last year i visited alexandria library
- what were you doing at this time last friday
- during the harvesting season farmers cut and stored their crops

Unit (10)

CONNECTING THE WORLD

Vocabulary

cyber friends	أصدقاء عبْر الإنترنت	access	تسجيل الدخول
instant message	رسائل فورية	adventure	مغامرة
electronic device	جهاز إلكتروني	prepare	يعد/ يجهز
email	إيميل- بريد إلكتروني	type	يكتب /يطبع
presentation	عرض - تقديم	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح
vlog	مدونة فيديو	publish	ينشر
website	موقع على الإنترنت	checklist	قائمة التدقيق
nasty comment	تعليقات كريهة/بغيضة	technology	تكنولوجيا
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	digital	رقمي
scrubber	مدخنة لتنقية الغازات والأبخرة	blog	مدونة
smog- free tower	برج تنقية الهواء	fossil fuels	وقود حفري
global community	مجتمع عالمي	smoke signals	إشارات الدخان
social media account	حساب على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	social media platform	منصة التواصل الاجتماعي
means of communication	وسائل الاتصال		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتحدث عن	instead of	بدلًا من	look at	ينظر إلى
share with	يتشارك مع	need to	يحتاج أن	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
similar to	مشابه لـ	help with	يساعد في	use for	يستخدم لـ
belong to	يخص	hand to	يُسلم لـ	set up	يؤسس
make fun	يسخر من	turn off	يغلق-يقفل	for fun	للمتعة
interested in	مهتم بـ	lots of	كثير من	contact with	يتصل بـ



Language

Giving advice (should - shouldn't)

Subject + should + inf.

We use "should + inf" to say that something is a good idea.

e.g. You should choose a title for your story.

Subject + shouldn't + inf.

We use "shouldn't + inf" to say that something is a bad idea.

e.g. You shouldn't forget your homework.

Conjunctions

and — We use (and) to connect two similar ideas.

- I like Arabic and English.

or — We use (or) instead of and in negative sentences or to express choices.

- I don't like meat or fish.
- I could write short stories or articles.

but — We use (but) to connect two different or contrasting ideas.

- He is fast, but he doesn't win the race.

Punctuation

- We put period (.) at the end of a sentence.
- We put commas (,) after "First, - Dear Editor,"
- We put question mark (?) at the end of a question.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 Nahla has a/an (ancient - old - new - young) social media account.
2 Nahla posts photos of (books - flowers - cats - tables).
3 Her friends always write (nice - nasty - bad - awful) comments.
4 Nahla posted her first video on her account (today - tomorrow - yesterday - last year)

2 Listen and complete.

1 Adam's mom is a .... at the local newspaper.
2 The story boy goes on a great adventure around ....
3 Adam's mom got home at .... o'clock.
4 Adam was working on a new ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

solve - causes - pollution - factories

Sara : Do you learn about .... (1) ....?
Toka : Yes, of course.
Sara : What .... (2) .... pollution?
Toka : Airplanes, traffic and .... (3) ....
Sara : How do we .... (4) .... this problem?
Toka : We can plant more trees.

Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

friends - mobile - account

Amr : Do you have a .... (1) ....?
Mazen : Yes,I do.
Amr : Do you have an email .... (2) ....?
Mazen : Yes, sure.
Amr : How many .... (3) .... do you have?
Mazen : I've about 5000 friends.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read and complete the sentence with the words from the box.

questions - email - nasty - pollution

1 Today I'm going to talk about ....(1).............. .
2 Are there any ....(2)..............?
3 A/An ....(3).............. is a digital form of a letter.
4 You shouldn't write ....(4).............. comments on social media.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

devices - smoke - technology - messages

There are different ways to send ....(1)..........from one place to another place. In the past people used ....(2)..........signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today we use ....(3).......... like electronic ....(4).......... to help us send messages.

5 Choose the correct word (vocabulary).

1 A (vlog - website - presentation - digital) is a way to share information with other people by talking about it.
2 A/An (blog - vlog - email - website) is a digital form of a letter.
3 Nahla has a new social media (account - photos - videos - access).
4 Air (location - pollution - resolution - presentation) is one of the biggest problems for people's health.
5 A (website - vlog - device - website) is similar to a blog.
6 People post videos they make instead (at - by - of - in) written texts.
7 Abdelrahman is a perfect typist. He can type without looking at the (mouse - screen - keyboard - email).
8 You should share your ideas (by - for - with - in) others.
9 I also made some (cyberfriends - doctors - enemies - vets) online.

10 You shouldn't write (good - nasty - kind - happy) comments on social media.
11 (Pictures - Photography - Photos - Paints) is my favorite hobby.
12 Some of my friends are also interested (on - in - at - about) writing after school.
13 The (fossil fuels - rain - sun - moon) make air pollution worse.
14 This is an (credible - incredible - good - bad) story, I can't believe it.
15 A (blog - vlog - website - email) is a home page on the World Wide Web.

Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) write your story by hand.
2 You (shouldn't - can't - should - mustn't) check your spelling while writing.
3 You shouldn't (has - had - having - have) any spelling or grammar mistakes.
4 You shouldn't (forget - forgets - forgot - forgotten) the punctuation while writing.
5 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) work too long without a break.
6 You (can't - shouldn't - should - mustn't) choose a title for your story.
7 You should (do - does - doing - did) your homework before dinner.
8 I'll could write short stories (but - as - or - so) articles.
9 There aren't any after-school clubs (at - on - in - or) our school.
10 There's a newspaper, (and - but - or - because) there isn't a magazine.
11 I'll go to a photography club (but - as - or - so) a sports club.
12 You (should - shouldn't - can't - mustn't) go to bed early. You have an exam tomorrow.

13 You shouldn't (is - being - are - be) afraid to ask your teacher for help.

14 You should (wears - wearing - wear - wore) a coat if the weather is cold.

15 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) write nasty comments online.

6 Read and match.

1 A blog is a special
2 What do you need
3 You should check
4 This is an

a your work while writing.
b incredible story.
c kind of website.
d to send an email?

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

7 Correct the underlined word.

1 I go to school at the morning. (..................)
2 Ali was on school yesterday. (..................)
3 I don't like science and math. (..................)
4 I like milk, or I don't like coffee. (..................)
5 I'd like a pen but a pencil. (..................)
6 You should be afraid to ask for help. (..................)
7 You shouldn't check your work while writing. (..................)
8 You should eat in class. (..................)
9 You shouldn't listen carefully to your teachers. (..................)
10 I do my homework on the evening. (..................)

8 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1 Study hard to succeed. (should)
....
2 Don't be afraid to ask for help. (shouldn't)
....
3 Don't eat in class. (shouldn't)
....
4 Get up early. (should)
....
5 Help the poor. (should)
....

Unit (11)

ON THE ROAD!

Vocabulary

garbage	قمامة	destination	وجهة الوصول	airplane	طائرة
streetcar	ترام	volunteer	متطوع - يتطوع	mule	بغل
traffic jam	ازدحام مروري	transportation	النقل و المواصلات	cab	سيارة أجرة
wagon	عربة نقل	plan	خطة	canal	قناة
waterway	ممر مائي	on time	في الوقت المحدد	canoe	زورق
subway	مترو الأنفاق	steam train	قطار بخاري	rocket	صاروخ
recycle	يعيد تدوير	traffic lights	إشارات المرور	traffic	المرور
reuse	يعيد استخدام	bike path	مسار للدراجات	reduce	يقلل
roof	سقف - سطح	green spaces	مساحات خضراء	walking	المشي
residents	السكان	recycling bins	صناديق إعادة التدوير	trash	قمامة
ferry	عبّارة	water vapor	بخار الماء	trip	رحلة
highway	طريق سريع				

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go with	يذهب مع	learn a lot about	يتعلم كثيرًا عن	fly through	يطير عبر (خلال)
need to	يحتاج أن	along the river	بطول النهر	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
use for	يستخدم لـ	up and down	ذهابًا و إيابًا	on time	في الوقت المحدد
a lot of	كثير من	other types of	أنواع أخرى من	is located on	يقع في
run on	يدار بـ	much faster than	أسرع كثيرًا من	come from	يأتي من
bad for	ضار لـ	on my way to	في طريقي إلى	no more than	ليس أكثر من
transport...to...	ينقل... إلى...	move from...to....	يتحرك من...إلى...		

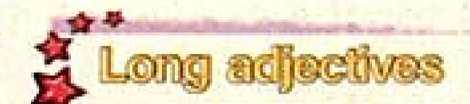


Comparative Adjectives



adj. (الصفة) + er + than

The coast is greener than the desert.



more / less + adj. (الصفة) + than

Gold is more expensive than silver.

Superlative Adjectives



the + adj. (الصفة) + est

e.g. The Nile is the longest river in the world.



the most / the least + adj. الصفة

e.g. This is the most interesting film.



- **un = not:** e.g. Kareema is unhappy.
- **dis = not:** e.g. I dislike playing tennis, but I like football.
- **re = again:** e.g. You can recycle old things.



Exercises

1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. Humans watched (ducks - birds - penguins - ostriches) and wanted to fly through skies.
2. We are even able to send people to the moon in (cars - trains - planes - rockets).
3. Fossil fuels are (good - better - bad - kind) for the environment.
4. (Teachers - Drivers - Doctors - Engineers) are designing greener airplanes.

2 Listen and complete.

1. The invention of the .... engine changed transportation.
2. The first car that ran on .... also appeared in the 1800s.
3. The first steam .... was in Wales in 1800s.
4. The .... in London opened 1863.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

major - transportation - skiff - highway

Seif : Can you tell me about .... (1) .... in ancient Egypt?

Safia : Yes, the most important .... (2) .... was the River Nile.

Seif : Why did the Egyptians travel along the river?

Safia : Because all the .... (3) .... cities were along the River Nile.

Seif : What kind of boat did they use?

Safia They used a small boat called a .... (4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

snowmobile - bike - canoe - island

Ezz : Where do you live ?

Reham : On a small .... (1) .... in lake Michigan in the US.

Ezz : What do tourists like to do on the lake?

Reham : They like to take .... (2) .... trips.

Ezz : How do you go to school in summer?

Reham : I go to school by .... (3) ....

Ezz : How do you travel to school in winter?

Reham : I love traveling to school by .... (4) ....

4 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

1. The train will reach its (destination - country - factory - city) in about an hour.
2. All the cars and trucks in the city cause a lot of (population - pollution - translation - celebration).
3. Dad likes walking so he always goes to work on (a train - foot - a bus - a car).
4. Anas is never on (seconds - minutes - time - hours).
5. Our car is in a traffic (gym - jam - bread - yogurt). We are moving very slowly.
6. You must stop at the traffic (candles - lamps - lights - balloons) when the light is red.
7. Put your plastic bottles in the recycling (baskets - bins - bags - pins).
8. (Green - Red - Yellow - Pink) spaces keep the air clean in our cities.
9. Over 1,000 (volunteers - pilots - residents - vets) live in my neighborhood.
10. We should (recycle - reduce - reuse - exercise) the traffic in our cities.

11 There is too much (garbage - scenery - green space - trees) in the street. It looks very messy.

12 Don't (reuse - reduce - replay - rewrite) this plastic bottle. It's got a hole in it.

13 We can (reduce - reuse - recycle - redo) plastic, paper and glass at the recycling center.

14 A lot of (volunteers - chairs - bins - bags) helped at the beach clean up.

15 In the past, farmers used to transport their goods in (airplanes - subway - wagons and trucks - rockets) .

Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1 What is the (cheap - cheapest - cheaper - more cheap) form of renewable energy?

2 We need to create a (cleaner - cleanest - clean - cleaner than) urban environment for everyone.

3 Our cities should be (much green - greener - greenest - less green) with more trees and plants.

4 Benban Solar Park in Egypt is the (larger - large - largest - larger than) solar park in Africa.

5 I think the wind energy is the (good - better - best - well) form of renewable energy.

6 Solar energy is (more - most - least - little) ecological than fossil fuels.

7 The (bad - worse - worst - better) things we can do about climate change is to burn fuels.

8 Alexandria is (busy - busier - busiest - the busiest) than Tanta.

9 The Sahara is the (big - bigger - biggest - much bigger) desert in the world.

10 Tigers are (large - larger - largest - the largest) than cats.

11 To (reduce - reuse - recycles - redo) somethings is to make it less.

12 I like tennis but I (disconnect - dislike - disagree - accept) handball.

13 (Disconnect - Appear - Dislike - Disappear) the TV when you leave the room.

14 Sweets are (unhappy - unfriendly - unhealthy - healthy).

15 Menna lost her bag. She is (unhealthy - unhappy - unfriendly - unkind) .

5 Read and complete the sentences with words in the box:

rural - ferry - electric - transport

1 What kinds of goods do people .... by plane?

2 Farmers still use wagons and carts in .... areas.

3 There are .... buses in my town.

4 I can cross the Nile on a ....

6 Read and complete the sentences with words in the box:

bigger - slowly - jam - streetcar

1 Residents travel around the city in a ....

2 We always get into traffic ....

3 Drive .... Children are playing.

4 Elephants are .... than polar bears.

6 Read and match.

1. Ancient Egyptians used
2. Farmers still transport
3. Rockets can take
4. Airplanes are faster

a. their goods in wagons.
b. than trains.
c. boats for transportation.
d. people to the moon.

1- ( )　　2- ( )　　3- ( )　　4- ( )

7 Correct the underlined words:

1. Safia is crying. She is happy. (..................)
2. Anas is tall than Seif. (..................)
3. The car is fastest than a bike. (..................)
4. Sweets and fats are healthy. (..................)
5. Drive slow. Children are playing. (..................)
6. Be careless. There are animals on the road. (..................)
7. You mustn't wear your seat belt. (..................)
8. Solar energy is less ecological than fossil fuels. (..................)
9. A gold medal is worse than a silver medal. (..................)
10. Dad likes walking so he goes to work on a bus. (..................)

8 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.

1. Anas is older than Seif. (younger)

....

2. Nobody is taller than Ali. (the tallest)

....

3. The desert is green. The coast is greener. (than)

....

4. No animal is bigger than the elephant. (biggest)

....

5. I don't like playing tennis. (dislike)

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

9 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The most important highway was the (lake - canal - River Nile - sea).
2. They made larger boats and ships from (glass - wood - metal - steel).
3. They used (oars - papyrus - seeds - plants) to make the boats move.

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did the ships have a large sail?

....

5. What was the first small boat called?

....

10 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the biggest - in - The Sahara - the world- is- desert- .

....

2. medal - better - is - A gold- a silver- than- medal- .

....

3. more ecological - fossil fuels - than - is- Solar energy- .

....

4. is - the world - Tutankhamun - famous - the most - in - pharaoh - .

....

5. polar bears - than - larger - Elephants - are - .

....

11 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Transportation in ancient Egypt"

Guiding words:

highway - River Nile - boat - skiff - oars

....

....

....

....

....

....

12 Punctuate the following sentences.

- what did they make the larger ships from

....

- we have good public transportation

....

- dont continue driving

....

- what did you learn

....

- the first streetcar was in london

....

- how do you get to school every day

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Unit (12) A GLOBAL CHALLENGE

Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

geology	علم الجيولوجيا	global	عالمي	newspaper report	تقرير صحفي
treaty	معاهدة	news	أخبار	lentils	عدس
rocks	صخور	newspaper	جريدة	chickpeas	حمص
stones	أحجار	pact	ميثاق	wheat	قمح
erosion	تآكل التربة	agreement	إتفاقية	dish	طبق / أكلة
drought	جفاف	leader	قائد / زعيم	appetizer	فاتح الشهية
flood	فيضان	foundation	مؤسسة	ingredients	مكونات
glacier	نهر جليدي	youth	الشباب	dessert	الحلو (بعد الأكل)
landslide	إنزلاق التربة	headline	عنوان رئيسي	party	حزب
tsunami	تسونامي	lead-in	المقدمة	water shortage	نقص المياه
agriculture	الزراعة	caption	تعليق (على صورة)	climate change	تغير المناخ
conference	مؤتمر	nations	أمم		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

move from..to..	ينتقل إلى	a piece of	قطعة من
result in	يتسبب في	agree to	يوافق أن
for a long time	لفترة طويلة	decide to	يقرر أن
in danger	في خطر	in fact	في الحقيقة
made of	مصنوع من	for example	على سبيل المثال





Language

The Future Simple Tense

Form: Sub + will + inf.

e.g. The drought will cause a water shortage.

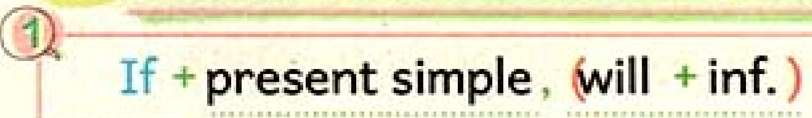
Usage: We use the future simple to talk about " future predictions"

Keywords:

tomorrow غدا	soon قريبا	in the future في المستقبل
next... (week - summer - year) (الأسبوع - الصيف - العام) ...... القادم		
in + (a future period) in (2030 - 2050)		

Negative: Sub + will + not (won't) + inf.

e.g. We will not burn fossil fuels.



"If..." (First Conditional)

Form

1. If + present simple , (will + inf.)

e.g. If we use electric vehicles, we will help the environment.

2. Sub. + (will + inf.) + if + present simple

e.g. We will help the environment if we use electric cars.

Usage

We use the first conditional to talk about somethings that is possible in the future.

e.g. If it rains, there will be a flood.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. The two friends were at the (cinema - park - club - pool).
2. They were (singing - playing - dancing - crying) football.
3. They heard the sound of a (donkey - cow - cat - bird).
4. The bird was very (hungry - unhappy - sad - small).

2 Listen and complete.

1. The High Dam in .... helps the people a lot.
2. It brings the irrigation to .... in Egypt and the Sudan.
3. It helps the .... to grow crops which need lots of water.
4. Its reservoir is very ....

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

erosion - doing - reading - bout

Sama : What are you .... (1) .... ?

Rodyna : I'm .... (2) .... a book.

Sama : What is it .... (3) .... ?

Rodyna : It's about .... (4) ....

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

too - food - koshari - like

Ahmed : What's your favorite .... (1) .... ?

Ali : I like .... (2) .... What about you?

Ahmed : I .... (3) .... burger.

Ali : Me, ... (4) ....

4 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

1. When it doesn't rain for a long time, there is sometimes a (landslide - tsunami - drought - glacier).
2. Too much rain in one area can cause a (flood - landslide - water shortage - tsunami).
3. When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called (drought - flood - landslide - tsunami)
4. A (glacier - tsunami - flood - drought) is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.
5. The (atmosphere - tsunami - flood - drought) is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases.
6. When chemicals from air pollution mix with water and sunlight, it creates (acid rain - tsunami - flood - drought).
7. Climate change affects everyone living on our (plant - plan - planet - plate).
8. A (party - pact - treaty - conference) is a group of people who have the same goals.
9. A (treaty - conference - pact - party) is a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic.
10. A (pact - conference - treaty - party) is a formal written agreement between two or more countries.
11. A (pact - conference - treaty - party) is a formal agreement between two people or groups of people.
12. The (lead-in - headline - caption - body) is one or two sentences that summarize the report.
13. The (caption - headline - lead-in - body) is the title of the report.
14. The (headline - caption - body - lead-in) is a description of a picture.
15. Erosion is a (chemical - medical - natural - industrial) process.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Choose the correct word (Grammar).

1. It (rain - rains - raining - will rain) tomorrow.
2. We (don't - won't - aren't - haven't) go to the beach next Friday.
3. Will he (buy - buys - buying - bought) an electric car?
4. Will you go shopping this afternoon? Yes, I (do - will - have - am).
5. We will (go - goes - going - went) to the museum.
6. If it doesn't rain, we (have - are having - will have - has) a water shortage.
7. Polar bears (lose - lost - will lose - loses) their habitat if the polar ice caps continue to melt.
8. If we (recycle - recycles - recycled - will recycle) plastic and glass, we will produce less waste.
9. If we plant more trees, the air (is - was - are - will be) cleaner.
10. It (help - helping - helped - will help) the environment if we stop using plastic.
11. If the climate (get - gets - getting - will get) hotter, there will be more droughts.
12. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution (but - so - and - or) plastic waste.
13. We need to stop pollution now (and - but - so - or) it will be too late.
14. Traffic wasn't a problem 50 years ago, (and - but - so - or) now it's very serious.
15. The government decided to stop using fossil fuels (and - but - so - or) they built a wind farm.

5 Fill in the spaces with:

title - agriculture - process - signed

1. Erosion is a natural ....
2. Heavy .... can cause erosion.
3. The headline is the .... of the report.
4. 196 parties .... the Paris agreement.

Fill in the spaces with:

party - glacier - drought - picture

1. During a ...., there isn't enough rain.
2. A .... is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly.
3. A caption is a description of a ....
4. A .... is a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs.

6 Read and match.

1	We must all	a	he won't waste water.
2	If it rains a lot	b	change create?
3	What can climate	c	slow climate change.
4	If dad stops washing his car,	d	there will be a flood.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

7 Correct the underlined words:

1. If we <u>uses</u> electric cars, our cities will be cleaner. (..................)
2. He is poor, <u>and</u> he is happy. (..................)
3. Ali was ill <u>or</u> he didn't go to school. (..................)
4. I will <u>visits</u> the zoo. (..................)
5. Sameh <u>doesn't</u> go to school tomorrow. (..................)
6. You <u>will</u> save electricity if you don't turn off your computer at night. (..................)
7. I got up early, <u>and</u> I went to school late. (..................)
8. If I have enough money, I <u>buy</u> a car. (..................)
9. If we <u>aren't</u> burn fossil fuels, the air will be cleaner. (..................)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

8 Rewrite the following using the word (s) in brackets.

1. He played tennis yesterday. (tomorrow)

....

2. If he gets up early, he will catch the train. (if)

....

3. He is rich. He is unhappy. (but)

....

4. She was sad because she lost her money. (so)

....

5. I visited Luxor. I visited Aswan. (and)

....

9 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our world needs our care. Many problems threatens it. One of these problems is climate change. Climate change is caused by many factories which lead to a great pollution in land, water and air. Burning fossil fuels like petrol and coal causes air pollution and global warming. Individuals and nations must work together to stop using fossil fuels and make use of cleaner sources of energy like solar, wind and waves energies. By this way climate change will disappear.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Climate change has (good - bad - great - important) effects on our world.
2. (Solar energy - Coal - Wave energy - Wind energy) is a fossil fuel.
3. We must (do - make - get - obtain) use of cleaner sources of energy.

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does our world need?

....

5. Is climate change a dangerous problem?

....

10 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. change - everything - Climate - our - affects - planet - on - .

....

2. had - meeting - leaders - important - World - a very - .

....

3. favorite - What's - food - your - ?

....

4. is - process - Erosion - a natural - .

....

5. ingredients - What - you - do - need - ?

....

11 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Food"

Guiding words:

plants - animals - wheat - cheese

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

12 Punctuate the following sentence.

- which food comes from egypt

....

- the pact was on december 12^{th}

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. Many tourists visit (London - Madrid - Luxor - Rome) from a Nile River cruise.
2. Tourists can see the (Sculpture - Temple - Hotel - Monument) of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings.
3. Ancient Egyptians (made - played- buried - cooked) their kings and queens here for thousands of years.
4. You can see lots of paintings and (photos - graves - engravings - pictures) in the temples.

2 Listen and complete.

1. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian .... before they come.
2. Egyptian people are famous for .... visitors with food and drink.
3. It's a good idea to bring a .... if you are invited to an Egyptian family.
4. The host usually doesn't .... the present at the time when they get it.

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

trees - caused - pollution - solutions

Air ....(1).......... is one of the most dangerous problems we face these days. It is ....(2).......... by smoke from cars and factories. We must find ....(3).......... to this problem. We can plant more ....(4).......... because they can absorb carbon dioxide and give us oxygen.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mazen is a pupil in fourth year primary. He gets up at six o'clock. First he washes his his face. Then he eats his breakfast. He goes to school at 7 o'clock. He goes to school by car. He finishes his school at one o'clock. He arrives home at 2 o'clock. He does his homework. He helps his mom. He watches a film. He goes to bed at 9 o'clock.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Mazen is in primary (five - six - four - three) .
2. Mazen goes to school by (bus - car - train - metro) .

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When does Mazen get up?

....

4. What meal does he eat before school?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amir didn't help his Grandma. (   )
2. Waleed's dad stopped using plastic bags in his store. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Grandma (refused - disagreed - volunteered - shouted) to help Amir.
4. (Grandma - Waleed - Mariam - Fishermen) texted back Amir.

6 Choose the correct word.

1 Today we (talk - talks - are talking - talking) about pollution.

2 I love (playing - reading - going - celebrating) Sham El-Nessim with my family.

3 Yesterday Akil (see - saw - seeing - sees) his goats walking away.

4 A (vlog - blog - device - presentation) is a special kind of website.

5 The Nile is the (long - longer - longest - smaller) river in the world.

6 (Pollution - Solution - Version - Erosion) is a natural process.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 is - a fantastic - Egypt - visit - country - to - .

....

2 many - do - How - tourists - to - Luxor - travel - ?

....

3 public - have - We - good - transportations - .

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Alexandria"

Guiding elements:

1 Where is Alexandria?

2 What places can you see there?

3 What is Alexandria famous for?

4 What can you make on the beaches?

....

....

....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. Adam gets up at (four - five - six - three) o'clock.
2. Adam likes (Arabic - English - math - art) and science.
3. All teachers love Adam because he is kind and (bad - impolite - polite - sad).
4. He goes to bed (early - late - now - then).

2 Listen and complete.

1. The problem with transportation that uses .... is that it burns fossil fuels.
2. People are developing .... forms of transportation like electric cars.
3. There are even electric buses that use some .... energy from solar panels on their roofs.
4. .... are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

train - Where - Luxor - Temple

Khaled : Hello, Ali. ....(1).......... do you live?

Ali : I live in ....(2).......... .

Khaled : Luxor! It is a nice place. What can you see there?

Ali : I can see the ....(3).......... of Karnak.

Khaled : How can I go there?

Ali : By ....(4).......... .

4 | Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nadia lives in Luxor with her family. Today she is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family. She wears her best dress and new shoes. She usually goes to school on Thursdays, but today is a holiday. The whole family is together. Grandpa and Grandma sit in the living room. Nadia's brother Khaled gives his grandparents some special cakes. Eid Al-Fitr is Nadia's favorite festival!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Nadia lives in (Aswan - Luxor - Hurghada - Cairo) with her family.
2. (Ramadan - Eid Al-Fitr - Sham-El Nessim - Eid Al Adha) is Nadia's favorite festival.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Khaled give his grandparents?

....

4. What does Nadia wear?

....

5 | The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Anissa's dad works at the market. (   )
2. Amir lived in a village. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Amir sent the picture of the (grandma - seagull - bottle - bag) to his friends.
4. The fishermen could help take the (seagull - plastic - nets - pictures) out of the river.



6 Choose the correct word.

1. There are lots of trees, plants and flowers in (polar - desert - mountain - rainforest) environment.
2. What are they (wear - wears - wearing - wore) now?
3. There are a lot of (cats - artifacts - bags - doors) in the museum.
4. You (should - shouldn't - can - may) look directly at the sun.
5. A metro, a train and a bus are good public (station - transportation - evaporation - destination) .
6. If it rains a lot, there (is - are - were - will be) a flood.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a machine - is - A turbine - that - makes - energy - .

....

2. statue - is - What - made - this - of - ?

....

3. Wael - does - How - to - travel - school - ?

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Helping the environment"

Guiding words:

trees - cleaner - carbon - oxygen - important - happier

....

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. When heavy rain moves soil, it creates (version - occasion - erosion - pollution).
2. During a (tsunami - drought - landslide - flood) there isn't enough rain.
3. (Doctors - Teachers- Mechanics - Farmers) can't grow food or feed their animals during drought.
4. During a drought rivers and lakes become (wet - dry - hot - cold).

2 Listen and complete.

1. One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in ....
2. The ancient Egyptians built the Step Pyramid for King .... in about 2630 BCE.
3. The Great Pyramid and the Sphinx are in ....
4. .... think that the Sphinx was built to protect the Pyramids.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

reading - library - Where - read

Mazen : Hello, Hanin. .... (1) .... are you going?

Hanin : I'm going to the .... (2) ....

Mazen : Why are you going there?

Hanin : To .... (3) .... a book.

Mazen : Do you like .... (4) .... ?

Hanin : Yes, I do.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile, so boats and ships were the most important form of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. In ancient Egypt, the most important highway was the (car-bus - River Nile - lake).
2. They made larger ships and boats from (metal - wood - cotton - linen)

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did they use oars? ....
4. Why did the ships use sails? ....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Waleed showed his father a picture of his friends. (   )
2. Grandma didn't like the seagull. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Dalia sent (photos - emails - bags - birds) to all her cousins .
4. Grandma sew some (plastic - cotton - metal - wood) bags.



6 Choose the correct word.

1. Hana(watch - watches - watching - is watching) a TV program now.
2. To(operate - decorate - celebrate - corporate) is to spend time with others, being happy and having fun.
3. Akil and Ottah (is - are - was - were) happy yesterday.
4. A(presentation - vlog - website - device) is similar to a blog .
5. Egypt is (big - small - bigger - biggest) than Tunisia.
6. A(party - treaty - pact - conference) is an agreement between two or more countries.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is- headline - Your - good- very - .

....

2. poetry- like- I - fiction- and- .

....

3. food- can- What - eat- you- a feast- at- ?

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Egypt"

Guiding elements:

1. What do you think of Egypt
2. What places can you see in Egypt?
3. What are the Egyptians famous for?
4. What are the most famous Egyptian foods?

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 We need to make your page (general - for all - private - local).

2 If you have nasty comments you can turn (on - by - off - at) the comments.

3 I want to teach you some things about social (media - dish - account - treaty).

4 If your page is private, people can't say (good - glad - bad - bright) things about you.

2 Listen and complete.

1 The invention of the .... engine changed transportation.

2 Ships with steam engines could travel much .... than using people or the wind to move boats.

3 The fist steam train was in .... in the 1800s.

4 The train made trips between .... and urban areas faster and safer.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

Aswan - saw - did - train

Sara : Where .... (1) .... you go last weekend?

Nora : I went to .... (2) ....

Sara : How did you go?

Nora : By .... (3) ....

Sara : What did you see?

Nora : I .... (4) .... the High Dam.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 The ancient Egyptians built amazing structures (4,000 - 2,000 - 3,000 - 1,000) years ago.

2 Archaeologists have found lots of(facts - artifacts - jobs- photos) .

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Why do lots of people visit Egypt every ear?

....

4 What do tourists want to see in Egypt?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 The friends together couldn't make a change. ( )

2 Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3 The friends were (happy - worried - delighted - pleased) about the seagull.

4 Amir helped his(sister - Grandma - cousin - brother) take out the clothes.

6 Choose the correct word.

1 We use a (site - temple - calendar - vase) to see what day, month or time of year it is.

2 To store is to (make - take - bake - keep) something.

3 Tarek (listen - is listening - listens - listened) to a podcast now.

4 You (should - shouldn't - can - must) forget punctuation while writing.

5 (Water vapor - Pool - Canal - Waterway) is water in the form of gas.

6 If the polar ice cap melts, sea levels (rises - will rise - rose - rising).

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 museum - visited - I - the - yesterday - .

....

2 need - do - Why - we - trees - more - ?

....

3 located - city - My - is - on - River Nile - the - .

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"The Pyramids"

Guiding words:

visited - bus - camels - Tourists - happy - enjoyed - nice

....

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were (cars - buses - trains - walking), running and swimming.
2. After that, humans began to use animals like (cats - donkeys - monkeys - elephants) and horses.
3. Canoes and boats are types of (river - water - road - street) transportation.
4. With carts (doctors - teachers - farmers - bakers) could transport their goods to markets in cities easily.

2 Listen and complete.

1. Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the .... and the Sphinx at Giza.
2. The Sphinx and Pyramids are .... all over the world.
3. .... think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids.
4. They .... the Sphinx from one huge piece of stone.

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

Pyramids - where - visit - did

Ali : Welcome to Egypt, ...(1).................. are you from?

Tom : I am from England.

Ali : How ....(2).................. you come here?

Tom : I came by plane.

Ali : What places will you ....(3).................. ?

Tom : The ....(4).................. and the Citadel.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars. Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of my heritage.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing (factories - temples - houses - flats) .
2. I'm very interested in Egypt's (heritage - trains - carriage - village) and I enjoy learning about it.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did archaeologists explore historical sites?

....

4. Why does the writer visit museums with his parents?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Mariam is Dalia's cousin. (   )
2. The seagull has two babies. (   )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. The plastic bag was around the seagull's (neck - hand - leg - eye)
4. (Bags - Trucks - Planes - Trains) transported plastic bottles of water.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6 Choose the correct word.

1 We often (eat - eats - ate - eating) hawawshi with salad.
2 I don't have any free time today, (so - or - and - but) I'm free this weekend.
3 If Tarek buys an electric car, he (helps - helped - will help - is helping) the environment.
4 (Fuel - Carbon - Water - Pollution) is something we burn to make heat or power.
5 A country's heritage is an important part of its (transportation - identity - party - character).
6 (Port - Sail - Tsunami - Boat) is a big wave that is started by an earthquake under the water.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 school - to - you - Do - go - foot - on - ?

....

2 of - people - Lots - Egypt - visit - year - every - .

....

3 of - moral - is - What - the - story - this - ?

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"A visit to the museum"

Guiding words:

Sara - museum - mom - bus - artifacts - tourists - happy

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

1. It's very (cold - snowy - windy - hot) in the desert.
2. Desert is a good place to get (solar - tidal - wind - geothermal) energy.
3. Solar energy is a (dirty - clean- bad - horrible) way to get electricity.
4. Solar energy is a good source of (non-renewble - dirty -renewable - bad) energy.

2 Listen and complete.

1. Iceland is a .... country.
2. Iceland has more than .... hot springs.
3. Iceland has 200 ....
4. When water gets .... ,it makes steam.

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

homes - carbon dioxide - atmosphere - plant

The world needs lots of trees because they take ....(1)......... out of the ....(2)......... and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build ....(3)......... or make farms, but it's important to ....(4)......... new trees.

 Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Ramadan, we have a meal in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! Last year my mom made. Kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I was helping her in the kitchen when I dropped the sugar! We quickly cleaned up the mess and then finished cooking that night, There were lots of different things to eat, but kunafa was my favorite!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. In Ramadan, we have a meal in the evening at (sunrise - noon - sunset - night).
2. There's always delicious (colors - food - subjects- books) in Ramadan.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who were you helping in the kitchen?

....

4. What was your favorite food that night?

....

5 The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandma could help Amir. ( )
2. Dalia couldn't send emails to her cousins. ( )

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Amir took the laundry up to the (roof - village - kitchen - bedroom) .
4. Amir was a (bad - ugly - smart - sad) boy.

6 Choose the correct word.

1 Laila (is drinking - was drinking - drinks - drank) some cold water yesterday evening.

2 Do you do the recycling (on - at - and - in) the morning?

3 What are you (does - do - doing - did) now?

4 If it doesn't (rains - raining - rain - rained), the rivers won't have any water.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 always - made - People - vases - clay - from - .

....

2 never - in - The sun - shines - the evening - .

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

"Water pollution"

Guiding words:

important - plastic - garbage - bags - chemicals - keep - clean

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The world needs lots of trees because they take carbon dioxide out of the atmosphere, and make our air cleaner. Sometimes people cut down trees and forests to build homes or make farm, but it 's important to plant new trees.

2) Listen and complete.

Urban environment is a metropolitan area which densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

Unit (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days,and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we grateful for all the good things in our lives.

2) Listen and complete.

Near Aswan, you can see the Temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.

Unit (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

You can visit the Temple of Karnak in Luxor. You can also visit the Valley of the Kings from the city. This is where the ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens. Many tourists visit this city from a cruise on the Nile River.

The Great Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

2) Listen and complete.

One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in Saqqara. The ancient Egyptian built the Step Pyramid for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE.

Alexandria used to be the capital of Egypt. There is an ancient Roman theater there and the famous Qaitbay Citadel. Its ancient library was famous all over the world.

Unit (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Nahla has a new social media account. Her older brother Faisal helped her to set up her account. She wants to be a wildlife photographer when she grows up. So,she posts photos of flowers, trees, birds, and animals on her account. Nahla's account is private so only her friends and family can see it. Her friends like her photos and they always write nice comments about them. Nahla has started making a short video, too. She posted her first video on her account yesterday.

2) Listen and complete.

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper. She got home at 6 O'clock.

Unit (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies. Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the moon in rockets.

The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the



environment. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

2) Listen and complete.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

The first car that ran on gasoline also appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives easier. The subway in London opened in 1863.

Unit (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My friend and I were in the park. We were running and playing football. Then, we had lunch. We heard a very unusual sound. It was a big colorful bird. It was very hungry.

2) Listen and complete.

The High Dam in Egypt helps the people a lot. Its reservoir is very big. It brings irrigation to people in Egypt and the Sudan. It helps the farmers to grow crops which need a lot of water.

Test (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings.

Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples.

2) Listen and complete.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family house , it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

Test (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Adam is a clever pupil in primary four. He goes to school every day. He gets up at six o'clock. He likes English and science. He is kind and polite, so all his teachers love him. He does his homework regularly. He sometimes helps his mom make dinner. He goes to bed early at ten O'clock.

2) Listen and complete.

The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

Test (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When heavy rain or strong winds move soil from one place to another, it creats erosion. Human activities such as heavy agriculture can also create this.
During a drought, there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a water shortage. This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals.

2) Listen and complete.

One of the oldest stone monuments in Egypt is in Saqqara. The ancient Egyptian built the Step Pyramid for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE.

The Great Pyramid and the Sphinx are in Giza. Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

Test (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I think there some things you need to learn about using social media,' she said. 'Sign into your account and go to the settings. First, we need to make your page private. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now let's turn off the nasty comments. That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want,you can turn them back on later.

2) Listen and complete.

The invention of the steam engine changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats. The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer.

Test (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Long time ago, the only types of transportation for humanswerewalking,running,andswimming.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportations. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily.

2) Listen and complete.

Sometimes when people think about Egypt,they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza .The Great Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza. They are famous all over the world.

Archaeologists think that the Sphinx was built to protect the Pyramids. The ancient Egyptians carved it from one piece of stone.

Test (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

It is very hot in the desert so it is a good place to get solar energy. This is a clean way to get electricity, and it is a good source of renewable energy.

2) Listen and complete.

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs and 200 volcanoes. When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground.

Test (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

We often make these cookies to eat at Eid Al-Fitr. They are round and they have sugar on top. We also use a special spice to make them taste delicious. We go to mosque to pray Eid.

2) Listen and complete.

Nadia lives in Luxor with her family. Today she is celebrating Eid Al-Fitr with her family. She is wearing her best dress and new shoes. She usually goes to school on Thursday but today is a holiday.

Test (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

You can show information to your friends. It can be about numbers using a bar graph. The line across the bottom is the x-axis and the line that goes up is the y-axis.

2) Listen and complete.

The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the river Nile.

Every year, the Nile flooded during the flooding season. The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of water. The flooding season lasted from June to September.

Test (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

To make ful medames, cook the beans with lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli,and herbs. People often make bread to eat with this meal. It is a popular traditional dish.

2) Listen and complete.

My ideal city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are houses and apartments,schools, two museums, and a hospital. There are a lot of green spaces where people can go for walks, ride the bikes,and enjoy being in nature.

Test (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I am Mona. I live in Alexandria with my family. We live in an apartment in Smoha. I have two brothers and one sister. My father is a doctor. My mother is an engineer. We are happy family. I always help my mom in the kitchen. My favorite place is Montaza Palace.

2) Listen and complete.

I'm Fares. I've a lot of problems with social media. When I signed in my account,I found nasty comments. My dad helped me in this problem. I must make my page private. I'm unhappy. I don't have many friends.

Book Answers

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

Exercises

1) Listen and complete.

1- trees 2- animals

3- rains 4- temperature

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- rural 2- plants 3- sparsely 4- weather

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- dry 2- ccstal

3- The land is next to the sea. 4- It's very dry.

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- The rural environment is a quiet place to live.

2- There is always a beach in a coastal environment.

3- What kind of environment do you live in?

4) Choose the correct word.

1- desert 2- urban 3- polar

4- mountainous 5- rural

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

There are lots of trees, plants and flowers in the rainforest. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- talking 2- are we 3- walking

4- is waiting 5- doing

2) Rewrite:

1- He is driving an electric car now

2- Tarek isn't listening to a podcast.

3- Are you helping to stop pollution?

4- What is she wearing?

3) Look and write a sentence.

- Hana is watching a TV programme.
- I am walking to school.
- Tarek is listening to a podcast.
- They are wearing gloves.

Exercises

1) Read and complete the text with:

1- picking 2- dirty 3- wearing 4- putting

2) Choose the correct word.

1- are finding 2- trying 3- am

4- are learning 5- driving 6- is watching

7- reading 8- wearing 9- Are you

10- putting 11- aren't

12- am traveling 13- reading 14- cleaning

15- discovering

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What are they discussing?

2- We are talking about pollution.

3- I am walking to school.

4- They are learning about climate change.

5- What is he doing to stop pollution?

4) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

There are many kinds of pollution such as air, water and land pollution. Old plastic or glass bottles can cause land and water pollution. Exhaust fumes of our cars and factories cause air pollution. We mus find solutions to get rid of pollution.

Lesson (3)

1) Complete the following dialog with:

1- renewable 2- What

3- oil 4- remains

2) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- solar 2- wind

3- In hot deserts. 4- From the moving water.

3) Choose the correct word.

1- non-renewable 2- sun 3- Tidal

4- store 5- turbines

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What are fossil fuels made from?

2- You can store electrical energy.

3- Renewable energy doesn't run out.

4- We can get renewable energy from natural resources.

4) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

We have two kinds of energy: renewable and non-renewable energies. Renewable energy resources are clean and will never run out. Non-renewable energies are not clean and will run out like coal and gas.

Lesson (4)

Exercises

1) Listen and complete.

1- cold 2- springs

3- hot 4- electricity

2) Read and complete the text with:

1- Hydroelectricity 2- electricity

3- waterwheels 4- High Dam

3) Choose the correct word.

1- title 2- Photos

3- facts and figures 4- steam 5- renewable

6- waterwheels 7- kilowatt 8- water

9- position 10- electricity

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Iceland is a cold country.

2- Iceland has more than 600 hot springs.

3- Why is the High Dam important?

4- How was hydroelectricity used in the past?

5- The High Dam was finished in 1971.

4) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

People have used hydroelectricity for a long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. It is a clean renewable energy.

Lessons (5&6)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the text with:

1- article 2- help 3- plant 4- take

2) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- T 2- F

3- They can plant more trees, use renewable energy and recycle old things.

4- We shouldn't drop garbage or waste electricity.

3) Choose the correct word.

1- are 2- drop 3- to 4- absorb

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Why is it important to plant trees?

2- I am not sure.

3- Forests help to protect the environment.

4- We shouldn't drop garbage.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

We should keep our environment clean. We shouldn't drop garbage. We should use renewable energy sources to keep our air clean. We should protect our forests. We should turn off the light when we leave a room.

Activities on Unit (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- more 2- less 3- plant 4- protect

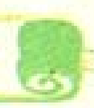
2) Listen and complete.

1- dry 2- clever 3- hot 4- animals

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- absorb 2- take

3- billion 4- important



4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1-cold 2-600

3-Holes down to the hot water underground.
4-They come from underground.

5) The Reader.

1-False 2-True 3-river 4-laundry

6) Choose the correct word.

1-helping 2-is picking

3-are 4-wearing

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-We are talking about pollution.

2-A turbine is a machine to make energy.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

There are two of these environments in the world: the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live in these areas, but there aren't any trees or flower.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

Exercises

3) Choose the correct word.

1-spring 2-meat 3-Monday 4-sunrise

5-sheep 6-prayers 7-grateful 8-lantern

9-Nile 6-fairground

2) Read and match.

1-c 2-a 3-d 4-b

3) Fill in the spaces with:

1-lasts 2-sacrifice 3-prayers 4-give

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1-Monday 2-fairgrounds

3-The start of spring. 4-Sunny and warm.

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Last year for Ramadan I made a special lantern. I used an empty glass jar and stuck bright pictures on the side. My brother gave me a small electric candle to put inside. I hung it on the balcony. It was pretty.

Lesson (2)

-) Choose the correct word.

1-often 2-well 3-never 4-easily 5-always

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1-making 2-What 3-Yes

2) Fill in the spaces with:

1-sayadeya 2-fish 3-olive

3) Choose the correct word.

1-often 2-share 3-always 4-fatta

5-carefully 6-well

4) Complete the sentences with:

1-ful medams 2-Bread

3-cook 4-Hawawshi

5) Read and match.

1-b 2-c 3-d 4-a

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

My favorite dish is fatta. I like eating it in Eid Al-Adha. Fatta has layers of rice and bread, with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest, so we don't eat it very often.

Lesson (3)

-) Choose the correct word.

1-am talking 2-wearing 3-help

4-Is 5-often eat

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1-wearing 2-dress 3-is 4-birthday

2) Fill in the spaces with:

1-cool 2-sleeves 3-leather 4-white

3) Choose the correct word.

1-is wearing 2-helps 3-is waiting

4- always gives 5- are celebrating

6- doesn't 7- do you 8- have

9- Are you waiting 10- rises

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- A blue dress. 2- Vegetarian.

3- Eid Al-Fitr 4- ful medames

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What are you wearing now?

2- Some people prefer white clothes.

3- The galabeya has long sleeves.

4- Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite festival.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr is a special festival. It comes at the end of Ramadan. I celebrate it with my family. We enjoy eating cookies. We have very good time.

Lesson (4)

Exercises

1) Listen and complete.

1- Egypt 2- sights

3- hospitable 4- traditional

2) Fill in the spaces with:

1- typical 2- generous

3- traditional 4- kahk

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- There are four statues inside the temple.

3- Egyptians are very generous.

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Aswan 2- 4

3- On February 22nd and October 22nd.

4- Ramses, Ra, Amun and Ptah.

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. You can see the famous pyramids. Egyptians are very generous people serve kahk in Eid Al-Fitr with sugar on top. They eat salted fish (fesikh) in Sham El-Nessim.

Lessons (5&6)

Exercises

1) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- b 4- a

2) Choose the correct word.

1- with 2- for 3- shipwreck 4- for 5- setting

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- king 2- alone

3- The ship sank and the man swam to an island?

4- With the best sailors.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- I saw a giant snake in the waves.

2- I will send you many presents.

3- How long was the servant on the island.

5) Punctuate the following sentence.

Mohamed was afraid on the island.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Last week, I went to Aswan with my family. We stayed in a good hotel. We went to see the sun festival. It was amazing. We had a wonderful time. We enjoyed ourselves very much.

Activities on Unit (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- Sham El-Nessim 2- eggs

3- Kahk 4- Fatta

2) Listen and complete.

1- king 2- sailors

3- successful 4- frightened

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- Egypt 2- pyramids

Book Answers

3- the Nile 4- The Red Sea

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- four 2- mosque

3- During the month of Zu Elhijja. 4- A sheep

5) The Reader.

1- T 2- F 3- A seagull 4- clothes

6) Choose the correct word.

1- is reading 2- lives

3- am painting 4- play

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Ful medames never has any meat in it.

2- What are you wearing today?

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

My favorite dish is ful Medames. I eat is every morning. I eat it with bread. It's made with lemon juice, onion and salt. It has no meat in it. Egyptians like it very much. It's very delicious.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- heritage 2- identity 3- history 4- past

2) Choose the correct word.

1- identity 2- temples 3- ancient

4- Archaeologists 5- site 6- calendar

7- civilization 8- monuments

9- flooding 10- harvesting 11- fertile

12- seasons 2- crops 3- growth

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

4) Read and complete the sentences with:

1- Agriculture 2- calendar

3- flood 4- crops

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- flood 2- three

3- It made the soil more fertile.

4- The flooding, growing and harvesting seasons.

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- All countries have their own heritage.

2- I visited the museum with my parents.

3- What do farmers grow in Egypt?

4- Are you interested in Egypt's heritage.

Lesson (2)

Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct word.

1- Great 2- throne 3- boat 4- Giza

2) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- did 2- museum 3- senet 4- old

3) Choose the correct word.

1- were playing 2- was digging

3- was studying 4- were visiting

5- was making 6- were taking

7- was 8- were 9- goats 10- winner

11- ordinary 12- artifacts 13- board

4) Rewrite.

1- He was walking in the street when he fell down.

2- They were happy yesterday.

3- Ali wasn't happy yesterday.

4- What were you doing yesterday evening?

5- They were tired last week.

5) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Sara was reading some information.

2- The goats were walking away over the hill.

3- He was sitting under a tree.

4) Read and complete the sentences with:

1- goats 2- tree 3- tired 4- waved

Lesson (3)

Exercises

1) Listen and choose the correct word.

1- tombs 2- Builders 3- 2630 4- stone

2) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Giza 2- tourists 3- Pyramids 4- carved

3) Choose the correct word.

1- monuments 2- pottery 3- clay

4- hold 5- perfume 6- protect 7- carved

8- sites 9- capital 10- cruise

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- vases 2- perfume

3- To see the amazing archaeological, sites.

4- Tools, pottery, vases and masks.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- How do many tourists travel to Luxor?

2- The temple of Karnak is in Luxor.

3- Ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery.

Lesson (4)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- chart 2- across 3- line 4- vertical

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- b 3- d 4- a

3) Choose the correct word.

1- bar 2- horizontal 2- y-axis

4- vertical 5- x-axis

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- How many people visited the exhibition?

2- Let's get your paper and pens.

3- What do you have to do?

Lessons (5&6)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- information 2- old

3- made 4- limestone

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

3) Choose the correct word.

1- old 2- made 3- long 4- believed

5- to 6- desert 7- map 8- for

9- from 10- for

4) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Khufu's solar boat is a wooden boat. It is about 4,600 years old. It is made of wood. It is 42 meters long. It is in Giza. Many people and tourists like to visit it.

Activities on Unit (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- year 2- amazing

3- monuments 4- artifacts

2) Listen and complete.

1- Giza 2- famous 3- Sphinx 4- stone

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Giza 2- Luxor

3- see 4- interesting

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- archaeologists 2- engravings

3- growing 4- saw 5- were playing

5) Fill in the spaces with:

1- Pyramids 2- famous 3- Sphinx 4- carved

6) Read and match.

1- b 2- c 3- d 4- a

7) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Tourists 2- Nile 3- buried

4- The Temple of Karnak and the valley of the kings.

5- In the temple.

8) The Reader.

1- T 2- F 3- tablet 4- sad

9) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- They used pottery vases to hold water.

Book Answers

2- We were visiting the museum.

3- Historians are interested in monuments.

10) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

11) Punctuate the following sentence.

Ancient Egyptian built the Pyramids and the Sphinx.

Review (7 - 8 - 9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- Ramadan 2- kunafa

3- kitchen 4- sugar

2) Listen and complete.

1- trees 2- air 3- forests 4- homes

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- wearing 2- Because

3- of 4- leather

4) Choose the correct word.

1- will visit 2- sink 3- were playing

4- absorb 5- cool

5) Fill in the spaces with:

1- cruise 2- Temple

3- buried 4- engravings

6) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

7) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Egypt 2- traditions

3- Welcoming visitors with food and drink.

4- The Pyramids, the old Luxor Temple and the Nile.

8) The Reader.

1- F 2- T 3- plastic 4- plastic

9) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- A turbine is a machine to make energy.

3- People always made vases from clay.

10) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming, flooding, growing and harveesting

11) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Which cities would you like to visit Omar?
- Mazen walks to school every day.

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

Exercises

1) Read and match.

1- d 2- e 3- b 4- c 5- a

2) Choose the correct word.

1- communication 2- signals 3- devices

4- email 5- account 6- platform

7- presentation 8- website 9- access

10- blog 11- vlog 12- pigeons

13- smartphone

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- How can people access websites?

2- An email is a digital form of a letter.

3- What means of communication do you use?

4) Read and complete the text with:

1- website 2- topic 3- access

4- devices 5- laptops

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- smoke 2- account

3- I need an account.

4- They are different ways to send messages from one place to another.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Means of communication are different ways to send messages from one place to another. In the past people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today we use technology like electronic devices to help send messages. An email is a digital form of letter. A blog is a special kind of website. A vlog is similar to a blog a site is a personal website.

7) Punctuate the following sentence.

- A li sent an email to his friendA mr.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct word:

1- should 2- should 3- should

4- should 5- shouldn't 6- shouldn't

2) Give your friend advice. Complete the sentences.

2- should have a rest.

3- should ask your teacher for help.

4- shouldn't hide your writing.

5- should wear glasses.

1) Choose the correct word.

1- should 2- shouldn't 3- should

4- shouldn't 5- should

2) Rewrite.

1- You shouldn't forget your homework.

2- You should eat some fruit.

3- You shouldn't play with matches.

4- You should help the poor.

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- feel 2- hungry 3- eat 4- should

2) Choose the correct word.

1- at 2- backpack 3- newspaper

4- incredible 5- with 6- keyboard

7- publish 8- for 9- shouldn't

10- should 11- shouldn't 12- shouldn't

13- shouldn't 14- shouldn't 15- should

3) Rewrite.

1- You should study hard to succeed.

2- You shouldn't write your story by hand.

3- You should check your spelling.

4- You shouldn't forget punctuation while writing.

5- You should share your ideas with others.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- I made a checklist for you.

2- You shouldn't work too long without a break.

3- You should check your work.

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- write 2- writer 3- Around Africa.

4- You should let more people read your story.

6) Punctuate the following sentence.

- O mar should studyS cience hard

Lesson (3)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- social 2- for 3- bad

4- long 5- shouldn't

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- b 4- a

3) Choose the correct word.

1- nasty 2- cyberfriends

3- post 4- Photography

5- fun 6- for 7- Sign

8- private 9- Social 10- off

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What do you use your account for?

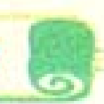
2- I made some cyberfriends online.

3- Is social media good or bad?

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- after 2- English

3- Photography. 4- He felt really sad.



6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Social media is very important for every one. These days. First you must have an account before using it. I made some cyberfriends online. You shouldn't write nasty comments on social media. If you have nasty comments sign into your account, go to the settings and turn it off.

7) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Mazen made some cyberfriends online.
- Nahla has a new social media account.

Lesson (4)

Exercises

1) Listen and complete.

1-and 2-in 3-but

4-create 5-improve

2) Choose the correct word.

1-create 2-improve 3-grade

4-in 5-in 6-and

7-or 8-at 9-in

3) Read and correct the underlined words.

1-I like football and handball.

2-He is poor, but he is happy.

3-I go to school in the morning.

4-I don't like meat or fish.

4) Read and match.

1-c 2-d 3-b 4-a

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Amira gets up early every day. She goes to school by bus. She likes Maths and Science. She goes home at 2 o'clock with her friends. She does her homework before dinner. She goes to bed at ten o'clock. Amira is a clever and polite girl. All her teachers love her.

6) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Mazen wants to rite a letter to Ahmed.

Lessons (5&6)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1-problem 2-Air pollution

3-causes 4-factories 5-solutions

2) Choose the correct word.

1-outdoor 2-rain 3-smog

4-eye 5-feet

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-Fossil fuel makes air pollution worse.

2-What causes air pollution?

3-We must find solutions to our problems.

4) Read and match.

1-c 2-d 3-b 4-a

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. It is created by air planes, traffic, factories and power plants. Smoke from these factories also cause pollution. We must work hard to find solutions to this big problem by planting more trees.

6) Punctuate the following sentence.

- I think Air pollution is a dangerous problem.

Activities on Unit (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1-tired 2-sister 3-watched 4-late

2) Listen and complete.

1-football 2-team 3-next 4-friends

3) Read and complete the text with:

1-website 2-topic 3-access 4-devices

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1-blog 2-one

3-From different electronic devices like smartphones, tablets and laptops.

4-On a vlog people post most videos they make instead of written texts.

5) The Reader.

1-T 2-T 3-house 4-worried

6) Choose the correct word.

1-website 2-shouldn't 3-nasty 4-should

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What do you need to send an email?

2- I have a different math test tomorrow.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Social media has a lot of pros and cons. You can send messages if you have an account. You can chat your friends. As for cons social media wastes a lot of time. You shouldn't stay too long without having a break. Using social media affects your eyesight.

Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- traffic 2- jam 3- trip 4- always

2) Choose the correct word.

1- on 2- exciting 3- lights

4- belt 5- slowly 6- careful

7- destination 8- pollution 9- time

10- transportation

3) Read and match.

1- c 2- a 3- d 4- b

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- on 2- jam 3- In a big city. 4- One hour.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- You must wear your seat belt.
2- Cities are exciting places to live.
3- Do you get to school on time?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

I live in a big city. It's an exciting place. There is a lot of traffic in my neighbourhood. The trip to school takes an hour. I always get into a traffic jam. I am always late for school.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- larger 2- more interesting
3- smaller 4- more 5- largest

2) Rewrite:

1- The dog is bigger than the cat.

2- The Nile is the longest river.

3- Girls are friendlier than boys.

4- My grandfather is older than my father.

5- Egypt is bigger than Tunisia.

6- The bee is bigger than the ant.

7- The city is cleaner than the country.

8- Seif is shorter than Anas.

-) Choose the correct word.

1- reuse 2- unhappy 3- dislike

4- rewrite 5- recycle 6- Disconnect

7- recycle

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- urban 2- spaces 3- recycle 4- paths

2) Choose the correct word.

1- reduce 2- recycling 3- green 4- volunteer

5- museum 6- longest 7- friendlier

8- youngest 9- than 10- more

3) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- science museum 2- recycle

3- By using recycling bins.
4- For people to ride their bikes on.

1) Read and complete the sentences with:

1- bigger 2- dislike 3- unhealthy
4- unhappy 5- disconnect

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Cairo is busier than Damietta.
2- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
3- I went to the museum yesterday.
4- Cats are more than friendly tigers.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

To have a cleaner urban environment, we should have green spaces. They make people happier. We need to recycle every thing we can. We need bike paths for people to ride their bikes on. Residents should use recycling bins.

7) Punctuate the following sentence.

The village is greener than the desert.

Book Answers

Lesson (3)

Exercises

1) Listen and complete.

1- steam 2- faster

3- transportation 4- faster

2) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- transportation 2- like

3- faster 4- cheap

3) Read and match.

1- b 2- d 3- a 4- c

4) Choose the correct word.

1- send 2- steam 3- Engineers

4- rural 5- solar 6- mules

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- wheel 2- faster 3- canoes

4- Mules, donkeys and horses.

5- It burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment.

6- When the wheel was invented.

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- The first steam train was in Wales.

2- People are developing new forms of transportation.

3- Farmers could transport their goods to markets.

4- The subway opened in London in 1863.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. Then, people used to use animals like mules, donkeys and horses. Then, they used canoes on water. When the steam train was invented it made transportation easier, faster and safer. Then the subway came and became more popular.

8) Punctuate the following sentence.

The train made the trips faster and safer.

Lesson (4)

Exercises

3) Read and match.

1- b 2- a 3- d 4- c

2) Choose the correct word.

1- on 2- that 3- Personally

4- driverless 5- warm 6- better

7- generate 8- solar 9- warm air

10- louder

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- The city uses green energy.

2- The new buses produce water vapor.

3- Parks are important for everyone.

4- What do the canals provide?

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- parks 2- bad

3- On the Nile River. 4- On their roofs.

Lessons (5&6)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- get 2- by 3- leave 4- subway

2) Choose the correct word.

1- metro 2- bikes 3- wet

4- on 5- ferry 6- fastest

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Every day I get up early. I wash my face and have breakfast. I leave for school. I take the subway. It is fast. It takes about an hour. It's safe and greener.

Activities on Unit (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- always 2- into 3- sixty 4- green

2) Listen and complete.

1- goods 2- subway 3- steam 4- continents

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- located 2- coast 3- spaces 4- walks

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- cities 2- Nile

3- Because all the major cities were along the Nile.

4- They used oars

5) The Reader.

1- True 2- False

3- dad's 4- market

6) Choose the correct word.

1- cheapest 2- better 3- more

5- largest

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Which cities in Egypt have a subway?

2- They used oars to make the boats move.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

My city is located on the Red Sea coast. There are many interesting places like cinemas, restaurants and clubs. We get electricity from solar panels on the roofs of our houses. For transportation we use green buses. We use them to protect the environment.

Unit (12)

Lesson (1)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- drought 2- rain 3- dry 4- farmers

2) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

3) Choose the correct word.

1- natural 2- rain 3- erode

4- agriculture 5- rise 6- shortage

7- limestone 8- down 9- tsunami

10- glacier 11- atmosphere 12- acid rain

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Humans can cause erosion.

2- Burning fossil fuels causes climate change.

3- We don't have enough water.

4- The Sphinx is made of limestone.

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Drought 2- dry

3- When people don't have all the water that they need.

4- Farmers can't grow food and nature is in danger.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Erosion is a natural process. It happened when rock and soil is moved from one place to another. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode river banks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Humans can cause erosion, too.

7) Punctuate the following sentence.

- How do humans affect erosion?

Lesson (2)

-) Choose the correct word.

1- Will 2- will visit 3- won't

4- play 5- tomorrow

1) Choose the correct word.

1- buy 2- uses 3- Will

4- will help 5- saves 6- will catch

7- will save 8- doesn't

2) Rewrite:

1- Tarek will help the environment if he buys an electric car.

2- Will he burn fossil fuels?

3- They will make his own electricity if he put solar panels on his roof.

4- We won't go to the zoo.

5- If Malak has more time, she will visit her aunt.

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- if 2- won't 3- will 4- electricity

2) Choose the correct word.

1- will help 2- won't 3- play

4- Will 5- will rise 6- tomorrow

7- rains 8- use 9- will save

10- use 11- will 12- help 13- go

3) Read and match.

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- It will rain tomorrow.

2- Malak will visit the desert.

3- Will you recycle these old newspapers?

4- I will help the environment.

7) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Will we go to the science museum?

Lesson (3)

1) Choose the correct word.

1- but 2- and 3- or

4- and 5- but

2) Fill in the spaces with

1- or 2- and 3- but 4- so

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- parts 2- What 3- name 4- caption

2) Read and match.

1- b 2- d 3- a 4- c

3) Choose the correct word.

1- bad 2- and 3- but

4- caption 5- reporter's name

6- or 7- so 8- body

9- headline 10- but

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- change 2- slow 3- glass

4- 40% of carbon dioxide. 5- In Glasgow.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Climate change is a dangerous problem.

2- It's very important to recycle.

3- A pact is a formal agreement.

4- People must stop using fossil fuels.

5- What causes climate change?

6) Read and complete the words in the box:

1- conference 2- pact 3- party 4- treaty

7) Punctuate the following sentence.

- The leaders had a conference last week.

Lesson (4)

Exercises

1) Listen and complete.

1- links 2- most 3- ships 4- countries

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Deforestation is a global emergency.

2- Who wrote the newspaper report?

3- We must keep the air clean.

4- Why do we need more trees?

3) Write a newspaper report about:

Answer by yourself

Lessons (5&6)

Exercises

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- koshari 2- ingredients

3- chickpeas 4- meal

2) Choose the correct word.

1- koshari 2- appetizer 3- dish

4- ingredients 5- dessert

3) Read and complete the words in the box:

1- koshari 2- wheat 3- ingredients 4- based

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- koshari 2- meat 3- juice

4- A famous restaurant. 5- Because it is healthy.

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

My favourite meal is koshari. I like it very much because it is a plant-based meal. The ingredients of koshari are rice, macaroni, lentils and chickpeas. My mothers cooks delicious koshari. I eat it at home with my family.

Activities on Unit (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- Drought 2- food

3- dry 4- water shortage

2) Listen and complete.

1- house 2- panels

3- electric 4- environment

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- environment 2- plant

3- shade 4- be

4) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- slow 2- recycled

3- We can slow climate change.

4- By reducing green houses immediately.

5) The Reader.

1- T 2- F 3- babies 4- happy

6) Choose the correct word.

1- will have 2- and 3- gets 4- or

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- We won't burn fossil fuels.

2- Electric cars will help the environment.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

We have to help the environment. Fossil fuels like coal, gas and oil cause air pollution. Cars, buses, trains and other traffic increase carbon dioxide in the air. We can use electric cars to keep the environment clean. We should recycle plastic bags and bottles. Trees can reduce carbon dioxide in the air so we have to plant more trees.

Review (10 - 11 - 12)

1) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- science 2- How 3- see 4- monuments

2) Choose the correct word.

1- vlog 2- should 3- roof

4- more expensive 5- will be

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- Erosion 2- soil 3- currents 4- erode

4) Read and match.

1- c 2- a 3- d 4- b

5) Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- walking and running 2- water

3- Mules, donkey and horses.

4- Their goods.

6) The Reader.

1- T 2- F 3- basket 4- village

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- The fossil fuels make air pollution worse.

2- My city is located on the Nile River.

3- Erosion is a natural process.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

My city is located on the Nile River. There are lots of parks where people can walk and sit in large green spaces. There is a shopping mall. My city makes electricity using solar energy to help the environment. I love my city.

8) Punctuate the following sentence.

- I go to school by bike.

Final Revision Answers

The Story
Amir takes action
Exercises (P. 40)

1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T 2- F 3- F 4- T
5- T 6- F 7- T

2) Choose the correct word.

1- laundry 2- village 3- Nile
4- plastic 5- seagull 6- beautiful
7- leg

Exercises (P. 44)

1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T 2- F 3- F 4- T
5- T 6- F 7- T

2) Choose the correct word.

1- tablet 2- sad 3- friends
4- plan 5- cloth 6- store
7- fishermen 8- cousins

Exercises (P. 48)

1) Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T 2- T 3- F 4- T
5- T 6- F 7- F 8- T

2) Choose the correct word.

1- house 2- market 3- plastic
4- pictures 5- river 6- important
7- cousins 8- happy 9- nest 10- babies

. Final Revision
Unit (7)
Exercises

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- trees 2- carbon dioxide
3- homes 4- important

2) Listen and complete.

1- densely 2- Most 3- buildings 4- traffic

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- doing 2- creating 3- keep 4- garbage

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Iceland 2- Five
3- 193 metres high.
4- For an industrial metal plant.

5) Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1- mountainous 2- rainforest 3- trees
4- coastal 5- rainforest 6- urban
7- dry 8- Fuel 9- Emissions
10- pollution 11- recycle
12- Climate change 13- gas
14- Renewable 15- polar

-) Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

1- riding 2- is walking 3- picking
4- are learning 5- Are you 6- watching
7- am writing 8- collecting
9- are helping 10- doing 11- going
12- reading 13- recycling 14- isn't
15- are planting 16- watching

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What kind of environment do you live in?
2- There are lots of trees in a rainforest.
3- Geothermal energy comes from natural resources.
4- Trees help to protect the environment.
5- Iceland is a cold country.

6- Why is it important to recycle?

7- What can we do to help the environment?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

It's important to keep the River clean. Water pollution affects the Nile badly. We shouldn't throw plastic bottles on the River. Garbage is also harmful to the river. It makes the water dirty. We shouldn't put chemicals in the river to keep it clean.

8) Rewrite.

1- He is helping the environment.

2- Noura isn't watching a TV program now.

3- Is he walking to school?

4- What are you doing?

5- Are you recycling plastic bags.

9) Read and match:

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

10) Correct the underlined word(s).

1- am walking 2- talking 3- is waiting

4- learning 5- is watching

6- are listening 7- reading 8- helping

9- are 10- go

11) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Why is it important to save the environment.
- Iceland is a cold country.

Unit (8)

Exercises

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- four 2- sheep 3- meat 4- mosque

2) Listen and complete.

1- Aswan 2- statues 3- twice 4- sunrise

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- going 2- Grandma 3- celebrate

4) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Sham El-Nessim 2- spring 3- paint

5) Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1- Al-Adha 2- fairgrounds 3- prayers

4- sunrise 5- grateful 6- Hawawshi

7- fatta 8- linen 9- cool

10- dessert 11- lanterns 12- out

13- pilgrimage 14- digest 15- recipes

-) Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

1- often 2- carefully 3- always

4- always 5- well

6- am making 7- eat

8- usually wear 9- is helping 10- works

11- wear 12- are celebrating

13- am painting 14- lives 15- quickly

6) Read and complete the sentence with:

1- fairgrounds 2- Sunset

3- lantern 4- Fatta

7) Read and complete the sentence with:

1- celebrating 2- spring

3- traditional 4- eggs

8) Read and match:

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

9) Correct the underlined word(s).

1- wears 2- Are 3- well

4- don't often 5- doing 6- never

7- lives 8- do

9- am helping 10- carefully

10) Rewrite.

1- Noura is wearing a blue dress today.

2- What are you celebrating?

3- Do you make cookies?

4- They are eating meat now.

5- Nadia doesn't make good cookies.

11) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Giza 2- Nile

3- Hatshepsut. 4- Sham El-Nessim.

12) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- There are some very big statues.

3- What do you wear on special days?

4- Linen keeps you cool.

5- Eid Al-Adha is a very important Islamic festival.

13) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

I went o the pyramids. I went with my family. I went by bus. They are in Giza. They are great. We took photos. We saw the sphinx. We enjoyed our time there. I enjoyed talking to tourists.

14) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Ancient Egyptians had many festivals.
- We celebrate Eid Al-Adha.
- What do you wear at Sham El-Nessim?
- Egypt has many beautiful places.
- Do you eat fattah at Eid El-fitr?
- People fast during Ramadan.

Unit (9)

Exercises

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- Luxor 2- buried 3- cruise 4- stone

2) Listen and complete.

1- Saqqara 2- Djoser

3- capital 4- Alexandria

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Alexandria 2- doing

3- library 4- interesting

4) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Giza 2- stones

3- Sphinx 4- protect

5) Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1- heritage 2- past 3- Temples

4- developed 5- civilization 6- sites

7- identity 8- calendar 9- flooded

10- flooding 11- harvesting

12- King 13- protect 14- cruise

15- exhibition

-) Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

1- were looking 2- was reading

3- fond 4- turned

5- was sitting 6- buried 7- carve

8- made 9- were you doing

10- were 11- were playing

12- was digging 13- was making

14- were visiting 13- saw

6) Read and complete the sentence with:

1- pottery 2- solar

3- heritage 4- senet

-) Read and complete the sentence with:

1- flood 2- fertile

3- civilization 4- seasons

7) Read and match:

1- b 2- a 3- d 4- c

9) Correct the underlined word(s).

1- found 2- doing 3- was

4- was doing 5- Were 6- were

7- sat 8- were you 9- took

10- showed

10) Rewrite.

1- I bought some pens last week.

2- They were walking when they saw the king.

3- What were you doing yesterday morning?

4- Where were you born?

5- We were watching TV at 5 p.m yesterday.

11) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- flooding 2- 4 months 3- canals

3- During the growing season. 5- Three months

12) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- What artifacts did you find?

2- Adam has to design a new museum.

3- Mazen used a bar chart to use his information.

4- Agriculture is a part of a country heritage.

5- I came home when Ali was watching TV.

13) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

The Sphinx is a very important historical site. It's at Giza. It's famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built it to protect the Pyramids. It's a part of Egypt's culture, it's a mark of Egypt's heritage.

14) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Khuf is famous for building the great pyramid at Giza.
- Nada and Ola were watching TV.
- Last year I visited Alexandria Library.
- What were you doing at this time last Friday?
- During the harvesting season, farmers cut and stored their crops.

Unit (10)

Exercises

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- new 2- flowers 3- nice 4- yesterday

2) Listen and complete.

1- writer 2- Africa

3- six 4- story

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- pollution 2- causes

3- factories 4- solve

- Read and complete the dialog with:

1- mobile 2- account 3- friends

4) Read and complete the sentence with:

1- pollution 2- questions

3- email 4- nasty

-) Read and complete the sentence with:

1- messages 2- smoke

3- devices 4- messages

5) Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1- presentation 2- email 3- account

4- pollution 5- vlog 6- of

7- keyboard 8- with

9- cyberfriends 10- nasty

11- Photography 12- in

13- fossil fuels 14- incredible

15- website

-) Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

1- shouldn't 2- should 3- have

4- forget 5- shouldn't 6- should

7- do 8- or 9- at

10- but 11- or 12- should

13- be 14- wear 15- shouldn't

6) Read and match:

1- c 2- d 3- a 4- b

7) Correct the underlined word(s).

1- in 2- at 3- or

4- but 5- or 6- shouldn't

7- should 8- shouldn't 9- should

10- in

8) Rewrite.

1- You should study hard to succeed.

2- You shouldn't be afraid to ask for help.

3- You shouldn't eat in class.

4- You should get up early.

5- You should help the poor.

Unit (11)

Exercises

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- birds 2- rockets

3- bad 4- Engineers

Final Revision Answer



-) Listen and complete.

1- steam 2- gasoline
3- train 4- subway

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Transportation 2- highway
3- major 4- skiff

-) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- island 2- snowmobile
3- bike 4- canoe

4) Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1- destination 2- pollution 3- foot
4- time 5- jam 6- lights
7- bins 8- Green 9- residents
10- reduce 11- garbage 12- reuse
13- recycle 14- volunteers
15- wagons and trucks

-) Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

1- cheapest 2- cleaner 3- greener
4- largest 5- best 6- more
7- worst 8- busier 9- biggest
10- larger 11- reduce 12- dislike
13- Disconnect 14- unhealthy 15- unhappy

5) Read and complete the sentences words in the box.

1- transport 2- rural 3- electric 4- ferry

-) Read and complete the sentences words in the box.

1- streetcar 2- jam 3- slowly 4- bigger

5) Read and match:

1- c 2- a 3- d 4- b

6) Correct the underlined word(s).

1- unhappy 2- taller 3- faster
4- unhealthy 5- slowly 6- careful
7- must 8- more 9- better
10- foot

7) Rewrite.

1- Seif is younger than Anas.
2- Ali is the tallest.
3- The coast is greener than the desert.
4- The elephant is the biggest animal.
5- I dislike playing tennis.

9) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- River Nile 2- wood 3- oars
4- To catch the wind. 5- It was called a skiff.

10) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- The Sahara desert is the biggest in the world.
2- A gold medal is better than a silver.
3- Solar energy is more ecological than fossil fuels.
4- Tutankhamun is the most famous pharaoh in the world.
5- Elephants are larger than polar bears.

11) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

In ancient Egypt the most important highway was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important forms of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move.

12) Punctuate the following sentence.

- What did they make the larger ships from?
- We have good public transportation.
- Don't continue driving.
- What did you learn?
- The first streetcar was in London.
- How do you get to school every day?

Unit (12)

Exercises

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- park 2- playing

3- bird 4- hungry

2) Listen and complete.

1- Egypt 2- people

3- farmers 4- big

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- doing 2- reading

3- about 4- erosion

-) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- food 2- koshari

3- like 4- too

4) Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1- drought 2- flood 3- tsunsmi

4- glacier 5- atmosphere

6- acid rain 7- planet 8- party

9- conference 10- treaty 11- pact

12- caption 13- headline 14- caption

15- natural

-) Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

1- will rain 2- won't 3- buy

4- will 5- go 6- will have

7- will lose 8- recycle 9- will be

10- will help 11- gets 12- and

13- or 14- but 15- so

5) Read and complete the text words in the box

1- process 2- agriculture

3- title 4- signed

-) Read and complete the text words in the box

1- drought 2- glacier

3- picture 4- party

5) Read and match:

1- c 2- d 3- b 4- a

6) Correct the underlined word(s).

1- use 2- but 3- so

4- visit 5- won't 6- won't

7- but 8- will buy 9- don't

7) Rewrite.

1- I will play tennis tomorrow.

2- He will catch the train if he gets up early.

3- He is rich, but he is unhappy.

4- She lost her money so she was sad.

5- I visited Luxor and Aswan.

9) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- bad 2- Coal 3- make

4- Our care. 5- Yes, it is.

10) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Climate change affects everything on our planet.

2- World leaders had a very important meeting.

3- What is your favourite food?

4- Erosion is a natural process.

5- What ingredients do you need?

11) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Food is very important for all of us. We should eat healthy food. They are food from plants like wheat, oat and flour. There are a lot of food from animals like cheese and yougut.

12) Punctuate the following sentence.

- Which food comes from Egypt?
- The pact was on December 12th.

Test (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- Luxor 2- temple

3- buried 4- engravings

2) Listen and complete.

1- traditions 2- welcoming

3- present 4- open

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- pollution 2- caused 3- solutions 4- trees

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- four 2- car

3- At six o'clock. 4- Breakfast.

5) The Reader:

1- False 2- True

3- volunteered 4- Waleed

6) Choose the correct word.

1- are talking 2- celebrating 3- saw

4- blog 5- longest 6- Erosion

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- How do many tourists travel to Luxor?

3- We have good public transportations.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Alexandria is in the north of Egypt. I can visit Alexandria library, Qaitbay citadel and Montaza palace. Alexandria is famous for. Its exciting beaches and fine weather especially in summer. On the beaches, I can make sandcastles, enjoy my time, play and run. Really, Alexandria is an exciting place to live.

Test (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- six 2- English 3- polite 4- early

2) Listen and complete.

1- gasoline 2- cleaner

3- solar 4- Engineers

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Where 2- Luxor 3- temple 4- train

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Luxor 2- Eid Al-Fitr

3- Some special cakes.

4- Her best dress and shoes.

5) The Reader:

1- True 2- True 3- seagull 4- plastic

6) Choose the correct word.

1- rainforest 2- wearing 3- artifacts

4- shouldn't 5- transportation 6- will be

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- A turbine is a machine that makes energy.

2- What is this statue made of?

3- How does Wael travel to school?

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

We should all hep the environment. We can plant more trees to make it a cleaner place to live. Plants give us oxygen and take out carbon dioxide. It's very important to help the environment and clean it. We will be happier if we keep the environment clean.

Test (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- erosion 2- drought

3- Farmers 4- dry

2) Listen and complete.

1- Saqqara 2- Djoser

3- Giza 4- Archaeologists

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- Where 2- library 3- read 4- reading

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- River Nile 2- wood

3- To move and control the direction.

4- To catch the wind.

5) The Reader:

1- False 2- False 3- emails 4- cotton

6) Choose the correct word.

1- is watching 2- celebrate 3- were

4- vlog 5- bigger 6- treaty

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Your headline is very good.

2- I like poetry and fiction.

3- What food can you eat at a feast?

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There are many places to see in Egypt such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea and the River Nile. Egyptians are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink and for inviting guests. Koshari and Fattah are the most Egyptian foods.

Test (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- private 2- off 3- media 4- bad

2) Listen and complete.

1- steam 2- faster

3- Wales 4- rural

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- did 2- Aswan 3- train 4- saw

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- 4000 2- artifacts

3- Because of the amazing archaeological sites.

4- The large monuments - pyramids and temples.

5) The Reader:

1- False 2- False 3- worried 4- Grandma

6) Choose the correct word.

1- calendar 2- keep 3- is listening

4- shouldn't 5- Water vapor 6- will rise

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- I visited the museum yesterday.

2- Why do we need more trees?

3- My city is located on the River Nile.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Last week, we visited the pyramids. We went by bus. We rode camels. We met a lot of tourists. We talked to them. We were very happy. We enjoyed our time there. We took a lot of pictures. Really, we had a nice time there.

Test (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- walking 2- donkeys

3- water 4- farmers

2) Listen and complete.

1- Pyramids 2- famous

3- Archaeologists 4- carved

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- where 2- did 3- visit 4- pyramids

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- temples 2- heritage

3- At places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza.

4- To learn about things people did in the past.

5) The Reader:

1- True 2- True 3- leg 4- Trucks

6) Choose the correct word.

1- eat 2- but 3- will help

4- Fuel 5- identity 6- Tsunami

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Do you go to school on foot?

2- Lots of people visit Egypt every year.

3- What is the moral of this story?

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Last week, Sara went to the museum. She went with her mom. She went by bus. She saw a lot of artifacts there. She met a lot of tourists she talked to them. She enjoyed her time there. She was very happy.

Test (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- hot 2- solar 3- clean 4- renewable

2) Listen and complete.

1- cold 2- 600 3- volcanoes 4- hot

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- carbon dioxide 2- atmosphere

3-homes 4-plant

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-sunset 2-food

3-My mom. 4-Kunafa.

5) The Reader:

1-True 2-False 3-roof 4-smart

6) Choose the correct word.

1-was drinking 2-in 3-doing 4-rain

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-People always made vases from clay.

2-The sun never shines in the evening.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Water pollution is one of the most important problems. People always throw plastic bottles and bags in the river. Sometimes people throw garbage, it produces chemicals. We should work hard to keep our rivers clean to drink clear water.

Test (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1-cookies 2-Eid Al-Fitr

3-sugar 4-delicious

2) Listen and complete.

1-Luxor 2-Eid Al-Fitr

3-dress 4-school

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1-should 2-recycling

3-plant 4-shouldn't

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-False 2-True

3-To keep our parks clean. 4-The environment.

5) The Reader:

1-False 2-True 3-harming 4-plastic

6) Choose the correct word.

1-shouldn't 2-wears 3-or 4-did

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-There are deserts on every continent.

2-You can recycle almost all paper.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr is celebrated in Shawwal. It is always after fasting Ramadan. We are very happy during this feast. We go to mosques for prayers. We eat kahk. It's my favorite dessert. It's very delicious with sugar on the top. Eid Al-Fitr is my best festial.

Test (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1-numbers 2-bottom

3-up 4-information

2) Listen and complete.

1-farm 2-flooded

3-could't 4-June

3) Read and complete the text with:

1-green spaces 2-trees

3-cooler 4-solar panels

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1-information 2-old

3-From websites.

4-How reliable the information is.

5) The Reader:

1-True 2-True 3-village 4-cousin

6) Choose the correct word.

1-is 2-are wearing 3-were 4-will

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1-You can't turn left.

2-Ancient Egyptians often wore jewelry to look beautiful.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

There are a lot of means of transportation. Walking and running were the first means. The streets are always busy, so there is much traffic. I always sit in traffic jam. The traffic lights are green, yellow and red. People used mules in the past to transport. Now they use airplanes. They are faster and safer.

Test (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- ful
2- bread
3- traditional
4- lemon

2) Listen and complete.

1- Red Sea
2- museums
3- green
4- nature

3) Read and complete the dialog with:

1- doing
2- pollution
3- traffic
4- planting

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- False
2- True
3- They catch dust and other harmful pollution.
2- Homes for bees, insects and birds and shade.

5) The Reader:

1- False 2- True 3- tablet 4- babies

6) Choose the correct word.

1- were making
2- are decorating
3- but
4- burn

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Geothermal energy uses cold water.
2- What are fossil fuels made from?

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

There are many traditional dishes in Egypt. Ful medames is very delicious. It is served with lemon juice. I like it very much. Fatta is a very famous Egyptian dish. It's served with meat rice and bread. It's my best meal especially during Eid Al-Adha feast.

Test (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- Alexandria
2- six
3- engineer
4- doctor

2) Listen and complete.

1- social
2- nasty
3- private
4- many

3) Read and complete the text with:

1- Erosion
2- flows
3- erode
4- heavy

4) Read the following text and answer questions.

1- Mansoura
2- doctor
3- Because he was a clever student.
2- To help the poor patients to recover quickly.

5) The Reader:

1- False 2- True 3- tablet 4- fisherman

6) Choose the correct word.

1- conference
2- greener
3- port
4- cool
5- should
6- communication

7) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1- Which sites would you like to visit?
2- People always made vases from clay.
3- Heavy rains and winds cause erosion.

8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr is my favourite feast. I celebrate it after Ramdan. It is in Shawwal. We go to parks and to mosques for prayers. We eat kahk and sometimes fattah. We feel very happy during they feast. We visit our friends and relatives.